

V O Y A G E
TO THE
PACIFIC OCEAN;

Undertaken by the Command of His Majesty,
FOR MAKING DISCOVERIES IN THE NORTHERN
HEMISPHERE.

PERFORMED UNDER THE DIRECTION OF
CAPTAINS COOK, CLERKE, & GORE,
In the Years 1776, 7, 8, 9, and 80.

Compiled from the various Accounts of that Voyage
hitherto Published.

IN FOUR VOLUMES.

VOL. II.

EDINBURGH:
PRINTED BY ALEX. LAWRIE AND CO.
FOR J. FAIRBAIRN, ADAMS'S SQUARE.

1805.

P A

Und

FOR MA

CAPT

Compiled

FO

NW
970P.
C471
3d
Edin.
1805
v.2

Arriv

the
Go
On
On
pu
ma
of
tea
na
tio
her
cul
cov
scr
At
Cu

CONTENTS

OF

VOL. II.

BOOK III. CONTINUED.

Arrival at Taloo in Eimeo—Visit from Maheine
 —Goats stolen—Expedition with a party across
 the island—Methods used in recovering the
 Goats—Island described—Arrival at Huaheine
 Omai's harangue in the assembly of Chiefs—
 Omai's establishment here—Theft detected and
 punished—Omai's behaviour at parting—Re-
 marks on his conduct and character—Account
 of the two New Zealanders—Arrival at Ulie-
 tea—Three marines desert—Conspiracy of the
 natives—Remarks on the Ulieteans—Descrip-
 tion and state of the Island—Description of Ota-
 heite—Natives and manners—Religion and pe-
 culiarities—Navigation, &c.—Christmas Isle dis-
 covered—Distress of two seamen—Island de-
 scribed—Three Islands discovered—Anchor at
 Atooi—Excursions—Customs—Visit Onekebow
 Customs, &c, &c.

Page.

38571

BOOK IV.

	Page.
Curious marine phenomena--Arrival at Nootka Sound--Intercourse with the natives--Description of their persons--Their colour--Common dress and ornaments--Occasional dresses and monstrous decorations of wooden masks--Their general dispositions--Songs--Musical instruments--Their eagerness to possess iron and other metals--Manner of building their houses--Their furniture and utensils--Wooden images--Their employments--Food, and manner of preparing it--Weapons--Manufactures and mechanic arts--Carving and painting--Canoes--Implements for fishing and hunting--Iron tools, and remarks on their method of procuring that metal	145

BOOK IV. CONTINUED.

Departure from Samganoodeha--Death of Mr Anderson--Most westerly point of America named Cape Prince of Wales--The ships anchor in a bay on the Eastern extremity of Asia--Behaviour of the natives, the Tschutski, to their visitors--Interview with some of them--Their weapons--Persons--Ornaments--Clothing--Winter and summer habitations--Dogs--The ships cross the strait to the coast of America--Appearance of the horizon indicating the vicinity of ice--Prodigious fields of ice--The situation of Icy Cape--Imminent danger of the two ships--Sea-horses killed, and eaten--Those animals described--Flocks of birds indicating land to the north--Observations on the formation of the ice--Fruitless attempt to weather Cape North--The prosecution of the Voyage deferred to the ensuing year.	148
---	-----

Arriv
len-
use
at
—
ed-
duc
—
of
and
and
Chr
Isle
At
tom

O
of the
ved. t
VO

V O Y A G E

TO THE

PACIFIC OCEAN.

BOOK III. CONTINUED.

145

CONTENTS.

Arrival at Taloo in Eimeo—Visit from Maheine—Goats stolen—Expedition with a party across the island—Methods used in recovering the Goats—Island described—Arrival at Huaheine—Omai's harangue in the assembly of Chiefs—Omai's establishment here—Theft detected and punished—Omai's behaviour at parting—Remarks on his conduct and character—Account of the two New-Zealanders—Arrival at Ulietea—Three marines desert—Conspiracy of the natives—Remarks on the Ulieteans—Description and state of the Island—Description of Otaheite—Natives and manners—Religion and peculiarities—Navigation &c. Christmas Isle discovered—Distress of two seamen—Island described—Three Islands discovered—Anchor at Atooi—Excursions—Customs—Visit Oneeheow—Customs—&c. &c.

ON the 30th of September, at day break, after leaving Otaheite, we stood for the north end of the island of Eimeo. Omai, in his canoe, arrived there before us, and endeavoured, by taking

some necessary measures, to show us the situation. We were not, however, without pilots, having several natives of Otaheite on board, and, among them, not a few women. Unwilling to rely entirely upon these guides, captain Cook dispatched two boats to examine the harbour; when, on a signal being made for safe anchorage, we stood in with both the ships, and anchored in ten fathoms water.

Taloo is the name of this harbour: it is on the north side of the island, and in the district of Oboonohoo or Pōonohoo. It runs above two miles between the hills, south, or south by east. It is not inferior to any harbour that we have met with in this ocean, both for security and goodness of bottom. It has also this singular advantage, that a ship can sail in and out with the reigning trade-wind. Several rivers fall into it; one of which is so considerable as to admit boats a quarter of mile up, where the water is perfectly fresh. The banks on the sides of this stream are covered with what the natives call the *pooroo* tree, on which they set no value, as it only serves for firing. So that wood and water may be procured here with great facility.

The harbour of Parowroah, on the same side of the island, is about two miles to the eastward, and is much larger within than that of Taloo; but the opening in the reef lies to leeward of the harbour, and is considerably narrower. These striking defects must give the harbour of Taloo a decided preference. There are one or two more harbours on the south side of the island, but they are not

the situation. having second, among to rely on. dispatched on a signal stood in fathoms

is on the west of Otaheite. It is two miles from the shore. It is met with the goodness of age, that the trade-which is of mile the banks with what they set that wood great faci-

the side of the bay, and but the harbour, being decided harbours are not

so considerable as those we have already mentioned.

As soon as we had anchored, great numbers of the inhabitants came aboard our ships from mere motives of curiosity, for they brought nothing with them for the purposes of barter: but several canoes arrived the next morning from more distant parts, bringing with them an abundant supply of bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, and a few hogs, which were exchanged for beads, nails, and hatchets; red feathers not being so much demanded here as at Otaheite.

On Thursday the 2d of October in the morning, captain Cook received a visit from Maheine, the chief of the island. He approached the ship with great caution and deliberation, as if he apprehended mischief from us, as friends of the Otaheiteans; these people having no idea that we can be in friendship with any one without adopting his cause against his enemies. This chief was accompanied by his wife, who, we were told, is sister to Oarao of Otaheite, whose death we heard of while we remained at this island. Captain Cook made them presents of such articles as seemed most to strike their fancy; and, after staying about half an hour, they went on shore. They returned, soon after, with a large hog, meaning it as a return for the captain's favour; but he made them an additional present to the full value of it, after which they went on board the Discovery to visit captain Clerke.

Maheine, supported with a few adherents, has made himself, in some degree, independent of Otaheite. He is between forty and fifty years of age,

and is bald-headed, which, at that age, is rather uncommon in these islands. He seemed ashamed of showing his head, and wore a kind of turban to conceal it. Whether they considered this deficiency of hair as disgraceful, or whether they supposed that we considered it in that light, it is not easy to determine. The latter, however, appears the most probable, from the circumstance of their having seen us shave the head of one of the natives whom we detected stealing. They naturally concluded, therefore, that this was the kind of punishment inflicted by us upon all thieves; and some of our gentlemen, whose heads were but thinly covered with hair, were violently suspected by them of being thieves.

Towards the evening, captain Cook and Omai, mounted on horseback, rode along the shore. Omai having forbid the natives to follow us, our train was not very numerous; the fear of giving offence having got the better of their curiosity. The fleet of Towha had been stationed in this harbour, and though the war was but of short duration, the marks of its devastation were everywhere conspicuous. The trees had lost all their fruit, and the houses in the neighbourhood had been burnt, or otherwise destroyed.

Having made every preparation for sailing, we hauled the ship off into the stream in the morning of the 6th, intending to put to sea the next day, but a disagreeable accident prevented it.

We had, in the day time, sent our goats ashore to graze; and, notwithstanding two men had been appointed to look after them, one of them had been stolen this evening. This was a considerable

loss, as it interfered with the captain's views of stocking other islands with these animals: he therefore was determined, if possible, to recover it. We received intelligence the next morning, that it had been conveyed to Maheine, who was, at that time, at Parowroah harbour. Two elderly men offered their services to conduct any of our people to him, in order to bring back the goat. Accordingly the captain dispatched some of his people in a boat, charged with a message to that chief, and insisted on both the goat and the thief being immediately given up.

Maheine had, only the day before, requested the commodore to give him two goats: but, as he could not spare them, without depriving other islands which had none of these animals, and was informed that there were two already upon this, he refused to gratify him. Willing, however, to assist his views in this respect, he desired an Otaheite chief then present, to beg Otoo, in his name, to convey two of these animals to Maheine; and, to induce him to comply with this request, sent to Otoo, by the same chief, a quantity of red feathers, equal in value to the two goats that were required. The commodore expected that Maheine, and all the other chiefs of the island, would have been perfectly satisfied with this arrangement; but he was mistaken, as the event clearly proves.

Little suspecting that any one would presume to steal a second, while the necessary measures were taking to recover the first, the goats were again put ashore this morning; and a boat, as usual, was sent for them in the evening. While our people were getting them into the boat, one was conveyed away

undiscovered. As it was immediately missed, we expected to recover it without much trouble, as it could not have been carried to any considerable distance. Several of the natives set out different ways to seek after it; for they all endeavoured to persuade us, that it must have strayed into the woods, not one of them admitting that it was stolen. We were, however, convinced to the contrary, when we perceived that not any of the pursuers returned; their intention was only to amuse us till their prize was safely deposited; and night coming on prevented all future search. At this instant the boat returned with the other goat, and one of the persons who had stolen it.

Most of the inhabitants, the next morning, were moved off, taking with them a corpse, which lay opposite the ship on a *toopapao*; and Maheine, we were informed, had retired to the remotest part of the island. It now plainly appeared, that a regular plan had been projected to steal what the commodore had refused to give; and that, having restored one, they were determined not to part with the other, which was a female, and with kid: and the commodore was equally determined to have it back again; he therefore applied to the two elderly men, who had been instrumental in recovering the first, who informed him that this had been taken to a place on the south side of the island, called Watea, by Hamoa, who was the chief of that place; but that would be delivered up if he would send for it. They expressed a willingness to conduct some of his people to the spot; but, finding that a boat might go and return in one day, he sent one with two of his officers, Mr Roberts and Mr Shuttle-

worth; one to remain with the boat, if she could not get to the place, while the other went with the guides, accompanied by some of our people. The boat returned late in the evening, when we were informed by the officers, that, after proceeding in the boat as far as rocks and shoals would permit, Mr Shuttleworth landed; and, attended with two marines and one of the guides, proceeded to the house of Hamda at Watea, where they were for some time amused by the people who pretended they had sent for the goat, and that it would soon be produced. It, however, never arrived; and night approaching, Mr Shuttleworth was obliged to return to his boat without it.

The commodore lamented that he had proceeded so far in this business, as he could not retreat with credit, and without giving encouragement to other islanders to rob us with impunity. Consulting with Omai and the two old men what methods to take, they advised him, without hesitation, to go into the country with a party of men, and shoot every person he should meet with. The commodore did not approve of this bloody counsel; but, early the next morning, set out with thirty-five of his people, accompanied by Omai, one of the old men, and three or four attendants. He also ordered lieutenant Williamson round the western part of the island with three armed boats to meet us.

This party had no sooner landed than the few remaining natives fled before us. The first person we met with upon our march was in a kind of perilous situation; for Omai, the instant he beheld him, asked captain Cook if he should shoot him; so fully was he persuaded that the advice he had

given was immediately to be carried into execution. The commodore then gave orders, both to him and our guide, to let it be made known that it was not our intention to injure, much less to destroy a single native. These joyful tidings soon circulated, and prevented the flight of the inhabitants.

Ascending the ridge of hills on our road to Watea, we were informed that the goat had been carried the same way, and could hardly have passed the hills: we therefore marched up in great silence, expecting to surprise the party who were bearing off the prize; but when we arrived at the uppermost plantation, we were told, that the animal we were in search of had indeed been kept there the first night, but had been carried to Watea the next morning. We made no further inquiry till we came within sight of Watea, where we were directed to Hamoa's house by some people, who also informed us that the goat was there. We therefore fully expected to obtain it on our arrival, but when we reached the house, the people we saw there denied that they had ever seen it, or knew any thing concerning it. Hamoa himself appeared, and expressed himself to the same effect.

On our first coming to Watea, several men were seen running to and fro in the woods with clubs and darts in their hands; and Omai, who ran towards them, had stones thrown at him. Hence it appeared that they intended to oppose any attempt that we might be induced to make, but, on seeing the strength of our party, had given up the design. We were confirmed in this opinion, by observing that all their houses were empty.

execution,
to him and
it was not
by a single
lated, and

to Watea,
en carried
passed the
silence, ex-
bearing off
uppermost
we were
the first
the next
y till we
re direct-
o also in-
therefore
but when
aw there
knew any
ared, and

men were
th clubs
o ran to-
Hence it
attempt
n seeing
e design.
bserving

After collecting a few of [the natives together, Omai was directed to expostulate with them on the absurdity of their conduct, and tell them that we had received sufficient evidence that the goat was in their possession, and that if it was not immediately delivered up, we should burn all their houses and canoes; but, notwithstanding this expostulation, they persisted in their denial of having any knowledge of it. In consequence of which, the commodore set fire to six or eight of their houses and two or three war canoes, which were presently consumed. After this we marched off to join the boats, which were, at that time, about seven or eight miles from us, and, in our road, burnt six other war canoes, without any opposition. On the contrary, many of the natives assisted us, more perhaps from fear than any other motive. At length Omai, who was at some distance before us, came back with information that a multitude of men were assembling to attack us. We prepared ourselves to receive them, but instead of enemies they were petitioners, with plantain-trees in their hands, which they laid down before us, entreating the commodore to spare a canoe that lay upon the spot, which he readily complied with.

About four o'clock in the afternoon we arrived at Wharrarade, where our boats were waiting for us. The district of Wharrarade belongs to Tiara-taboonoue; but this chief, together with the other principal people of the place, had fled to the hills; though we made no attack upon their property, they being in amity with Otoo. Here we remained about an hour in order to rest ourselves, and afterwards set out for the ships, where we ar-

rived at eight o'clock in the evening ; but no tidings of the goat had been at that time received ; and, of course, the operations of the day had been ineffectual

Early on Friday morning Oct. 10. the Capt. dispatched one of Omai's men to Maheine, charged with this peremptory message, that if he persisted in his refusal to deliver up the goat, a single canoe should not be left upon the island, and that hostilities should never cease while the stolen animal continued in his possession. That the messenger might perceive that the commodore was in earnest, he ordered the carpenter, in his presence, to break up three or four canoes that lay at the head of the harbour. The planks were, by his direction, taken on board, to serve as materials for building a house for Omai, at the place where he intended to reside. The commodore, properly attended, went afterwards to the next harbour, where he destroyed seven or eight more canoes, and returned on board about seven in the evening. On his arrival he was informed that the goat had been returned about half an hour before ; and it appeared, from good intelligence, that it came from the very place where the inhabitants, the day before, declared they knew nothing about it. But, from the message delivered to the chief in the morning, he perceived that the commodore was not to be trifled with.

Thus ended this troublesome and unfortunate business, equally to be regretted by the natives and by captain Cook. He was grieved to reflect, that after refusing to assist his friends at Otaheite in the invasion of this island, he should soon be obliged to engage in hostilities against its inhabitants ;

which, perhaps, were more injurious to them than Towha's expedition.

Our intercourse with the natives was renewed the next morning; several canoes bringing bread-fruit and cocoa-nuts to the ships to barter; whence it was natural to conclude, that they were conscious they had merited the treatment they had received; and that the cause of captain Cook's displeasure being now removed, they apprehended no further mischief. We weighed, with a breeze, down the harbour about nine, but it was so faint and variable that we did not get out to sea till noon, when we steered for Huaheine, Omai attending in his canoe.

At Eimeo the ships were abundantly supplied with fire-wood. We did not supply ourselves with this article at Otaheite, as there is not a tree in Matavai but what is useful to the inhabitants. We also received here a large supply of refreshments in hogs, bread-fruit, and cocoa-nuts.

There is very little difference between the produce of this island and that of Otaheite; but the difference in their women is remarkable. Those of Eimeo have a dark hue, are low in stature, and have forbidding features.

The appearance of Eimeo bears not the least resemblance to that of Otaheite. The latter being a hilly country has little low land except some deep valleys, and the flat border that almost surrounds it near the sea. Eimeo has steep rugged hills running in different directions, leaving large valleys, and gently rising grounds about their sides. The hills, though rocky, are generally covered with trees almost to the tops. At the bottom of the harbour

of Taloo, the ground gradually rises to the foot of the hills; but the flat border on the sides becomes quite steep at a small distance from the sea. This renders it a prospect superior to any thing we saw at Otaheite. In the low grounds the soil is a yellowish stiff mould; on the lower hills it is blacker and looser, and the stone which composes the hills is of a bluish colour, interspersed with some particles of glimmer. Near the place where our ships were stationed are two large stones, concerning which some superstitious notions are entertained by the natives. They consider them as brother and sister; that they are *Eatoos* or divinities, and that they came from Ulietea, by some supernatural means.

On the morning that succeeded our departure from Eimeo, we saw Huaheine extending from southwest by west, to west by north. At twelve o'clock we anchored in the northern entrance of Owharre harbour, situate on the west side of the island. Omai, in his canoe, entered the harbour just before us, but did not land. Though many of his countrymen crowded to see him, he did not take much notice of them. Great numbers also came off to the ships, insomuch that we were greatly incommoded by them. Our passengers immediately informed them of our transactions at Eimeo, multiplying, by ten at least, the number of houses and canoes that we had destroyed. Captain Cook was not much displeased at their giving this exaggerated account, as he found that it made a considerable impression upon all who heard it, so that he had hopes that it would induce the natives of this

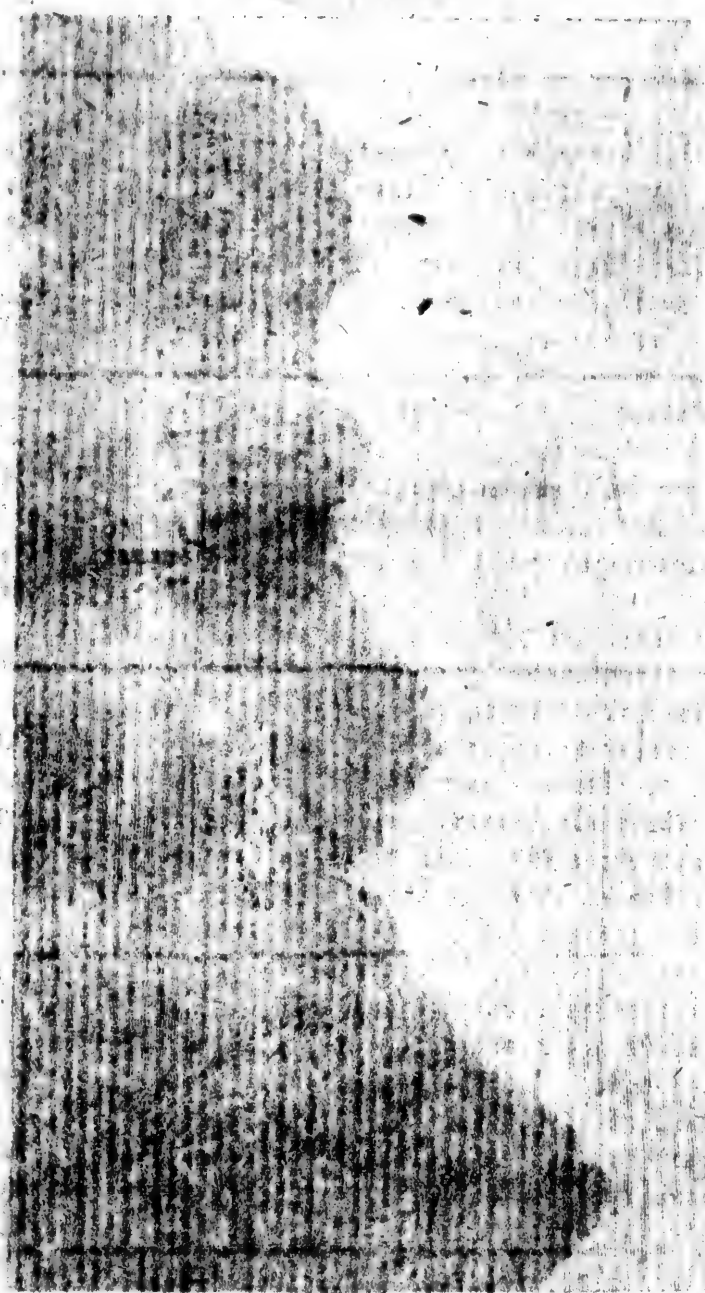
the foot of
des becomes
sea. This
ing we saw
oil is a yel-
is blacker
es the hills
some par-
e our ships
concerning
entertained
brother and
s, and that
apernatural

departure
ding from
At twelve
ntrance of
ide of the
e harbour
ugh many
e did not
bers also
ere great-
s immedi-
t Eimeo,
of houses
ain Cook
his exag-
a consi-
so tha'
es of this



A VIEW OF HUAHINE.

THE HISTORY OF THE



lar
on
'
d t
Th
o t
nes
n t
o h
tea
nod
ad
dispe
quere
mad
he s
t wa
hos
was
and
state
t im
o m
resol
men
hen
'
got
nea
dres
orep
self,
had
Ota

land to treat him in a better manner than they had done in his prior visits.

‘ Our arrival here,’ says captain Cook, ‘ brought all the principal people of the island to our ships. This was just what I wished, as it was high time to think of settling Omai; and the presence of these chiefs, I guessed, would enable me to do it in the most satisfactory manner. He now seemed to have an inclination to establish himself at Ulietea; and if he and I could have agreed about the mode of bringing the plan to bear, I should have had no objections to adopt it. His father had been dispossessed, by the men of Bolabola, when they conquered Ulietea, of some land in that island; and I made no doubt of being able to get it restored to the son in an amicable manner.’ For that purpose, it was necessary he should be upon good terms with those who were now masters of the island; but he was too great a patriot to listen to any such thing; and was vain enough to suppose that I would reinstate him in his forfeited lands by force. This made it impossible to fix him at Ulietea, and pointed out to me Huaheine as the proper place. I therefore resolved to avail myself of the presence of the chief men of the island, and to make this proposal to them.

‘ After the hurry of the morning was over, we got ready to pay a formal visit to Taireetareea, meaning then to introduce this business. Omai dressed himself very properly on the occasion, and prepared a very handsome present for the chief himself, and another for his *Eatooa*. Indeed, after he had got clear of the gang that surrounded him at Otaheite, he behaved with such prudence as to gain

respect. Our landing drew most of our visitors from the ships, and they, as well as those that were on shore assembled in a large house. The concourse of people on this occasion was very great; and, amongst them, there appeared to be a greater proportion of personable men and women than we had ever seen in one assembly at any one of these new islands. Not only the bulk of the people seemed, in general, much stouter and fairer than those of Otaheite, but there was also a much greater number of men who appeared to be of consequence, in proportion to the extent of the island, most of whom had exactly the corpulent appearance of the chiefs of Wateoo. We waited some time for Taireetareea, as I could do nothing till the *Earee rabie* came; but when he appeared, I found that his presence might have been dispensed with, as he was not above eight or ten years of age. Omai, who stood at a little distance from this circle of great men, began with making his offering to the gods, consisting of red feathers, cloth, &c. Then followed another offering, which was to be given to the gods by the chiefs; and, after that, several other small pieces, and tufts of red feathers were presented. Each article was laid before one of the company, who, I understood, was a priest, and was delivered with a set speech or prayer, spoken by one of Omai's friends who sat by him, but mostly dictated by himself. In these prayers, he did not forget his friends in England, nor those who had brought him safe back. The *Earee rabie no Pretane*, Lord Sandwich, *Toote*, *Tatee* (Cook and Clerke) were mentioned in every one of them. When Omai's offerings and prayers were finished,

the priest took each article, in the same order in which it had been laid before him, and, after reciting a prayer, sent it to the *morai*; which, as Omai told us, was at a great distance, otherwise the offerings would have been made there.

‘ These religious ceremonies having been performed, Omai sat down by me, and we entered upon business, by giving the young chief my present, and receiving his in return; and, all things considered, they were liberal enough on both sides. Some arrangements were next agreed upon as to the manner of carrying on the intercourse betwixt us; and I pointed out the mischievous consequences that would attend their robbing us, as they had done during my former visits. Omai’s establishment was then proposed to the assembled chiefs.

‘ He acquainted them, ‘ That he had been carried by us into our country, where he was well received by the great king and his *Earees*, and treated with every mark of regard and affection while he staid amongst us; that he had been brought back again, enriched by our liberality with a variety of articles, which would prove very useful to his countrymen; and that, besides the two horses which were to remain with him, several other new and valuable animals had been left at Otaheite, which would soon multiply and furnish a sufficient number for the use of the islands in the neighbourhood. He then signified to them, that it was my earnest request, in return for all my friendly offices, that they would give him a piece of land to build a house upon, and to raise provisions for himself and servants; adding, that if this could not be obtained for him in Huaheine, either by gift or by purchase,

I was determined to carry him to Ulietea and fix him there.'

'Perhaps I have here made a better speech for my friend than he actually delivered, but these were the topics I dictated to him. I observed, that what he concluded with about carrying him to Ulietea, seemed to meet with the approbation of all the chiefs; and I instantly saw the reason. Omai had, as I have already mentioned, vainly flattered himself that I meant to use force in restoring him to his father's lands in Ulietea, and he had talked idly, and without any authority from me on the subject, to some of the present assembly; who dreamed of nothing less than a hostile invasion of Ulietea, and of being assisted by me to drive the Bolabola men out of that island. It was of consequence, therefore, that I should undeceive them; and, in order to this, I signified, in the most peremptory manner, that I neither would assist them in such an enterprize, nor suffer it to be put in execution while I was in their seas; and that if Omai fixed himself in Ulietea, he must be introduced as a friend, and not forced upon the Bolabola men as their conqueror.

'This declaration gave a new turn to the sentiments of the council. One of the chiefs immediately expressed himself to this effect: 'That the whole island of Huaheime, and every thing in it were mine, and that, therefore, I might give what portion of it I pleased to my friend.' Omai, who, like the rest of his countrymen, seldom sees things beyond the present moment, was greatly pleased to hear this, thinking, no doubt, that I should be very liberal, and give him enough. But to offer

a and six
speech for
but these
rved, that
g him to
vation of
e reason.
d, vainly
ce in re-
a, and he
from me
ly; who
vasion of
the Bola-
equence,
and, in
emptory
in such
xecution
nai fixed
a friend,
their cen-

he senti-
immedi-
that the
g in it
ve what
i, who,
things
ased to
uld be
to offer

what it would have been improper to accept, I considered as offering nothing at all; and, therefore, I now desired that they would not only assign the particular spot, but also the exact quantity of land which they would allot for the settlement. Upon this, some chiefs, who had already left the assembly, were sent for; and, after a short consultation among themselves, my request was granted by general consent, and the ground immediately pitched upon adjoining to the house where our meeting was held. The extent, along the shore of the harbour, was about two hundred yards, and its depth, to the foot of the hill, somewhat more; but a proportional part of the hill was included in the grant.

This business being settled to the satisfaction of all parties, I set up a tent ashore, established a post, and erected the observatories. The carpenters of both ships were also set to work to build a small house for Omai, in which he might secure the European commodities that were his property. At the same time some hands were employed in making a garden for his use, planting shaddocks, vines, pine-apples, melons, and the seeds of several other vegetable articles; all of which I had the satisfaction of observing to be in a flourishing state before I left the island.

Omai now began seriously to attend to his own affairs, and repented heartily of his ill-judged prodigality while at Otaheite. He found at Huahine a brother, a sister, and a brother-in-law, the sister being married. But these did not plunder him, as he had lately been by his other relations. I was sorry, however, to discover, that though they were too honest to do him any injury, they were of too

little consequence in the island to do him any positive good. They had neither authority nor influence to protect his person or his property ; and, in that helpless situation, I had reason to apprehend that he ran great risk of being stripped of every thing he had from got us, as soon as he should cease to have us within his reach, to enforce the good behaviour of his countrymen by an immediate appeal to our irresistible power.

A man who is richer than his neighbours is sure to be envied by numbers who wish to see him brought down to their own level. But in countries where civilization, law, and religion impose their restraints, the rich have a reasonable ground of security. And, besides, there being in all such communities, a diffusion of property, no single individual need fear that the efforts of all the poorer sort can never be united to injure him, exclusively of others who are equally the objects of envy. It was very different with Omai. He was to live amongst those who are strangers, in a great measure, to any other principle of action besides the immediate impulse of their natural feelings. But, what was his principal danger, he was to be placed in the very singular situation of being the only rich man in the community to which he was to belong. And having by a fortunate connection with us got into his possession an accumulated quantity of species of treasure, which none of his countrymen could create by any art or industry of their own ; while all coveted a share of this envied wealth, it was natural to apprehend that all would be ready to join in attempting to strip its sole proprietor.

‘ To prevent this, if possible, I advised him to make a proper distribution of some of his moveables to two or three of the principal chiefs, who, being thus gratified themselves, might be induced to take him under their patronage, and protect him from the injuries of others. He promised to follow my advice; and I heard, with satisfaction, before I sailed, that this very prudent step had been taken. Not trusting, however, entirely to the operation of gratitude, I had recourse to the more forcible motive of intimidation. With this view, I took every opportunity of notifying to the inhabitants, that it was my intention to return to their island again, after being absent the usual time; and that, if I did not find Omai in the same state of security in which I was now to leave him, all those whom I should then discover to have been his enemies, might expect to feel the weight of my resentment. This threatening declaration will probably have no inconsiderable effect. For our successive visits of late years have taught these people to believe that our ships are to return at certain periods; and while they continue to be impressed with such a notion, which I thought it a fair stratagem to confirm, Omai has some prospect of being permitted to thrive upon his new plantation.’

While we remained in this harbour, we carried the bread on shore to clear it of vermin. The number of cock-roaches that infested the ship at this time is almost incredible. The damage we sustained from them was very considerable, and every attempt to destroy them proved fruitless. If any kind of food was exposed for a few minutes, it was covered with these noxious insects, who soon pierced

it full of holes, so that it resembled an honeycomb. They proved particularly destructive to birds, which had been stuffed for curiosities, and were so fond of ink, that they ate out the writing on the labels fastened to different articles; and the only thing that preserved books from their ravages was the closeness of the binding, which prevented these devourers from insinuating themselves between the leaves. According to Mr Anderson, they were of two sorts, the *blatta orientalis*, and *germanica*.

The intercourse of trade and friendly offices between us and the inhabitants of Huaheine was undisturbed by any accident till the evening of the 22d, when one of the natives found means to get into Mr Bailey's observatory, and carry off a sextant unobserved. Captain Cook was no sooner informed of this theft than he went ashore, and desired Omai to apply to the chiefs to procure restitution. He accordingly made application to them, but they took no steps towards recovering the instrument, being more attentive to a *beeva* that was then exhibiting, till the captain ordered the performers to desist. Being now convinced that he was in earnest, they began to make some inquiry after the delinquent, who was sitting in the midst of them, with such marks of unconcern, that the captain was in great doubt of his being guilty, particularly as he denied it. Omai, however, assuring him that this was the person, he was sent on board the ship and there confined. This raised an universal ferment among the assembled islanders, and the whole body fled with precipitation. The prisoner being examined by Omai, was with difficulty brought to confess where he had concealed the sex-

honeycomb
birds, which
e so fond of
e labels fas
r thing that
s the close.
ese devour
the leaves.
f two sorts,

nt, and it was brought back unhurt the next morn-
g. After this, the natives recovered from their
consternation, and began to gather about us as usu-
As the thief appeared to be a shameless villain,
Captain Cook punished him with greater severity than
he had ever done any former culprit. Besides hav-
g his head and beard shaved, he commanded that
both his ears should be cut off, and then dismissed
him.

This punishment, however, did not deter him
from committing other offences; for, early in the
morning of the 25th, a general alarm was spread,
occasioned, as was reported, by one of our goats
being stolen by this very man; and though, upon
examination, we found every thing safe in that quar-
ter, yet it appeared that he had destroyed and car-
ried off from Omai's grounds several vines and cab-
bage-plants; and he publicly threatened to put him
to death, and set fire to his house, as soon as we
should quit this place. To prevent his doing any
further mischief, the captain ordered him to be
seized and confined again on board the ship, with
a view of carrying him off the island; and this in-
tention seemed to give general satisfaction to all the
chiefs. He was a native of Bolabola; but there
were too many of the people here ready to co-ope-
rate with him in all his designs. We had indeed
always met with more troublesome persons in Hua-
ine than in any other of the adjacent islands; and
it was only fear, and the want of proper opportuni-
ties, that induced them to behave better now. A-
narchy and confusion seemed to prevail among
them. Their *Earee rabie*, as we have already ob-
served, was but a child; and we did not find that

there was any individual, or any set of men who held the reigns of government for him ; so that whenever any misunderstanding occurred between us, we never knew, with sufficient precision, to whom it was necessary to apply, in order to effect an accommodation, or procure redress.

Omai's house being now almost finished, many of his moveables were carried ashore on the 26th. Amongst a variety of other useless articles was a box of toys, which, when exposed to public view, seemed greatly to please the gazing multitude. But, as to his pots, kettles, dishes, plates, drinking-mugs, glasses, and the whole train of our domestic accommodations, hardly any one of his countrymen would so much as look at them. Omai himself now began to think that they were of no use to him ; that a baked hog was more savoury food than a boiled one ; that a plantain leaf made as good a dish or plate as pewter ; and that a cocoa-nut-shell was as convenient a goblet as a black-jack. And, therefore, he very wisely disposed of as many articles of English furniture for the kitchen and pantry as he could find purchasers for, amongst the people of the ships, and receiving from them in return hatchets and other iron tools, which had a more intrinsic value in this part of the world, and added more to his distinguishing superiority over those with whom he was to pass the remainder of his days.

Among the numerous presents bestowed upon him in England, fire-works had not been omitted ; some of which we exhibited in the evening of the 28th, before a great multitude of people, who beheld them with a mixture of pleasure and appre-

ension. Those which remained were put in order and left with Omai, pursuant to their original destination.

On Thursday the 30th, early in the morning, the Bolabola man whom we had in confinement, found means to escape out of the ship, carrying with him the shackle of the bilboe-bolt that had been put about his leg, which was taken from him soon as he arrived on shore, by one of the chiefs, and given to Omai, who quickly came on board to inform the captain that his mortal enemy was again at loose upon him. We found, upon inquiry, that the sentry placed over the prisoner, and even the whole watch in that part of the ship where he was confined, having fallen asleep, he seized the favourable opportunity, took the key of the irons out of the drawers into which he had seen it put, and set himself at liberty. This escape convinced the commodore that his people had been very remiss in their night duty, which rendered it necessary to chastise those who were now in fault, and to establish some new regulations that might prevent similar negligence in future. He was pleased to hear afterwards, that the fellow who had escaped had gone over to Ulietea.

Omai was no sooner settled in his new habitation, than captain Cook began to think of departing from Ouaheine, and got every thing off from the shore this evening, except a goat big with kid, and a horse and mare, which were left in the possession of our friend, who was now to be finally separated from us. We also gave him a boar and two sows of the English breed; and he had got two or three cows of his own. The horse had covered the

mare during our continuance at Otaheite, so that the introduction of a breed of horses into these islands had probably succeeded by this valuable present.

'The history of Omai,' says captain Cook, 'will perhaps interest a very numerous class of readers, more than any other occurrence of a voyage, the objects of which do not, in general, promise much entertainment. Every circumstance therefore, which may serve to convey a satisfactory account of the exact situation in which he was left, will be thought worth preserving; and the following particulars are added to complete the view of his domestic establishment. He had picked up at Otaheite four or five *Toutous*; the two Zealander youths remained with him, and his brother and some others joined him at Huaheine; so that his family consisted already of eight or ten persons; in that can be called a family, to which not a single female as yet belonged; nor, I doubt, was likely to belong, unless its master became less volatile. At present Omai did not seem at all disposed to take unto himself a wife. The house which we erected for him was twenty-four feet by eighteen and ten feet high. It was composed of boards, the spoils of our military operations at Eimeo; and, in building it, as few nails as possible were used, that there might be no inducement, from the love of iron, to pull it down. It was settled, that immediately after our departure he should begin to build a large house after the fashion of his country; one end of which was to be brought over that which we had erected, so as to enclose it entirely for greater security. In this work some of the chiefs pro-

ite, so that
s into these
valuable pre

tain Cook
ous class of
ce of a voy
eneral, pro
circumstance
satisfactory
he was left
the follow
the view of
icked up at
wo Zealand
brother and
so that his
persons; in
ot a single
was likely
ess volatile
disposed to
which we
y eighteen
boards, the
o; and, in
used, that
he love of
that imme
in to build
untry; one
that which
y for great
chiefs pro

ised to assist him; and, if the intended building should cover the ground which he marked out, it will be as large as most upon the island.

His European weapons consisted of a musquet, bayonet, and cartouch-box, a fowling-piece, two pair of pistols, and two or three swords or cutlasses. The possession of these made him quite happy; which was my only view in giving him such presents. For I was always of opinion that he would have been happier without fire-arms, and other European weapons, than with them; as such implements of war, in the hands of one whose prudent use of them I had some grounds for mistrusting, would rather increase his dangers than establish his superiority. After he had got on shore every thing that belonged to him, and was settled in his house, we had most of the officers of both ships two or three times at dinner, and his table was always well supplied with the very best provisions that the island produced.

Before I sailed I had the following inscription put upon the outside of his house:

Georgius Tertius, Rex, 2 Novembris, 1777.

<i>Naves</i>	{	<i>Resolution, Jac. Cook, Pr.</i>
	{	<i>Discovery, Car. Clerke, Pr.</i>

On the 2d of November, at four in the afternoon, I took the advantage of a breeze which then sprung up at east, and sailed out of the harbour. Most of our friends remained on board till the ships were under sail, when, to gratify their curiosity, I ordered five guns to be fired. They then all took their leave except Omai, who remained till we were

at sea. We had come to sail by a hawser fastened to the shore. In casting the ship it parted, being cut by the rocks, and the outer end was left behind, as those who cast it off did not perceive that it was broken; so that it became necessary to send a boat to bring it on board. In this boat Omai went ashore, after taking a very affectionate farewell of all the officers. He sustained himself with a manly resolution till he came to me. Then his utmost efforts to conceal his tears failed; and Mr King, who went in the boat, told me that he wept all the time in going ashore.

‘ It was no small satisfaction to reflect that we had brought him safe back to the very spot from which he was taken. And yet, such is the strange nature of human affairs, that it is probable we left him in a less desirable situation than he was in before his connection with us. I do not mean by this, that because he has tasted the sweets of civilized life he must become more miserable from being obliged to abandon all thoughts of continuing them. I confine myself to this single disagreeable circumstance, that the advantages he received from us have placed him in a more hazardous situation with respect to his personal safety. Omai, from being much caressed in England, lost sight of his original condition, and never considered in what manner his acquisitions, either of knowledge or of riches, would be estimated by his countrymen, at his return; which were the only things he could have to recommend him to them now, more than before, and on which he could build either his future greatness or happiness. He seemed even to have mistaken their genius in this respect, and, in

some measure, to have forgotten their customs; otherwise he must have known the extreme difficulty there would be in getting himself admitted as a person of rank, where there is, perhaps, no instance of a man's being raised from an inferior station by the greatest merit. Rank seems to be the very foundation of all distinction here, and of its attendant, power; and so pertinaciously, or rather blindly, adhered to, that unless a person has some degree of it he will certainly be despised and hated, if he assumes the appearance of exercising any authority. This was really the case, in some measure, with Omai, though his countrymen were pretty cautious of expressing their sentiments while we remained amongst them. Had he made a proper use of the presents he brought with him from England, his, with the knowledge he had acquired by travelling so far, might have enabled him to form the most useful connections. But we have given too many instances, in the course of our narrative, of his childish inattention to this obvious means of advancing his interest. His schemes seemed to be of a higher, though ridiculous nature; indeed I might say meaner; for revenge, rather than a desire of becoming great, appeared to actuate him from the beginning. This, however, may be excused, if we consider that it is common to his countrymen. His father was doubtless a man of considerable property in Ulietea, when that island was conquered by those of Bolahola, and with many others sought refuge in Huaheine, where he died, and left Omai, with some other children, who by that means became totally dependent. In this situation he was taken up by Captain Furneaux, and carried to Eng-

land. Whether he really expected, from his treatment there, that any assistance would be given him against the enemies of his father and his country, or whether he imagined that his own personal courage and superiority of knowledge would be sufficient to dispossess the conquerors of Ulietea, is uncertain; but from the beginning of the voyage this was his constant theme. He would not listen to our remonstrances on so wild a determination; but flew into a passion, if more moderate and reasonable counsels were proposed for his advantage. Nay, so infatuated and attached to his favourite scheme was he, that he affected to believe these people would certainly quit the conquered island as soon as they should hear of his arrival in Otaheite. As we advanced, however, on our voyage, he became more sensible of his error; and, by the time we reached the Friendly Islands, had even such apprehensions of his reception at home, that he would fain have staid behind at Tongataboo, under Feenou's protection. At these islands he squandered away much of his European treasure very unnecessarily; and he was equally imprudent at Tiaraboo, where he could have no view of making friends, as he had not any intention of remaining there. At Matavai he continued the same inconsiderate behaviour, till I absolutely put a stop to his profusion; and he formed such improper connections there, that Otoo, who was at first much disposed to countenance him, afterwards openly expressed his dislike of him, on account of his conduct. It was not, however, too late to recover his favour; and he might have settled to great advantage in Otaheite, as he had formerly lived several years there, and was now a good

deal not
a very l
objectio
also bec
as a nat
complis
men tha
But Or
would
tlement
fused to
possessi
wealth,
still co
him, o
plained
have p
of futu
cannot
the fut
can on
arise f
tipath
people
endeav
aheine
sent,
them
all ot
for th
him,
an an
state
fathe

deal noticed by Towha, whose valuable present of a very large double canoe we have seen above. The objection to admitting him to some rank would have also been much lessened if he had fixed at Otaheite, as a native will always find it more difficult to accomplish such a change of state among his countrymen than a stranger, who naturally claims respect. But Omai remained undetermined to the last, and would not, I believe, have adopted my plan of settlement in Huaheine, if I had not so explicitly refused to employ force in restoring him to his father's possessions. Whether the remains of his European wealth, which after all his improvident waste was still considerable, will be more prudently used by him, or whether the steps I took, as already explained, to ensure him protection in Huaheine, shall have proved effectual, must be left to the decision of future navigators of this ocean; with whom it cannot but be a principal object of curiosity to trace the future fortunes of our traveller. At present, I can only conjecture, that his greatest danger will arise from the very impolitic declarations of his antipathy to the inhabitants of Bolabola. For these people, from a principle of jealousy, will no doubt endeavour to render him obnoxious to those of Huaheine, as they are at peace with that island at present, and may easily effect their designs, many of them living there. This is a circumstance which of all others he might the most easily have avoided; for they were not only free from any aversion to him, but a person whom we found at Tiaraboo, as an ambassador or priest, absolutely offered to reinstate him in the property that was formerly his father's; but he refused this peremptorily, and to

the very last continued determined to take the first opportunity that offered of satisfying his revenge in battle. To this I guess he is not a little spurred by the coat of mail he brought from England; clothed in which, and in possession of some fire-arms, he fancies that he shall be invincible.

Whatever faults belonged to Omai's character, they were more than overbalanced by his great good nature and docile disposition. During the whole time he was with me I very seldom had reason to be seriously displeased with his general conduct. His grateful heart always retained the highest sense of the favours he had received in England; nor will he ever forget those who honoured him with their protection and friendship, during his stay there. He had a tolerable share of understanding, but wanted application and perseverance to exert it; so that his knowledge of things was very general, and in many instances very imperfect. He was not a man of much observation. There were many useful arts, as well as elegant amusements, amongst the people of the Friendly Islands, which he might have conveyed to his own, where they probably would have been readily adopted, as being so much in their own way; but I never found that he used the least endeavour to make himself master of any one. This kind of indifference is indeed the characteristic foible of his nation. Europeans have visited them at times for these ten years past, yet we could not discover the slightest trace of any attempt to profit by this intercourse; nor have they hitherto copied after us in any one thing. We are not therefore to expect that Omai will be able to introduce many of our arts and customs amongst

them, or
been long
that he
various
be no sn
these isl
vels will
them, v
had he
ply, of
heite an
ceed, a
O
brought
ged ma
me to
pressing
cations.
very an
being a
others
me in
others
land.
If
any sh
have b
with
contin
exceed
natura
tion.
ority
signe

them, or much improve those to which they have been long habituated. I am confident, however, that he will endeavour to bring to perfection the various fruits and vegetables we planted, which will be no small acquisition. But the greatest benefit these islands are likely to receive from Omai's travels will be in the animals that have been left upon them, which probably they never would have got, had he not come to England. When these multiply, of which I think there is little doubt, Otahite and the Society Islands will equal, if not exceed, any place in the known world for provisions.

Omai's return, and the substantial proofs brought back with him of our liberality, encouraged many to offer themselves as volunteers to attend me to *Pretane*. I took every opportunity of expressing my determination to reject all such applications. But notwithstanding this, Omai, who was very ambitious of remaining the only great traveller, being afraid lest I might be prevailed upon to put others in a situation of rivalling him, frequently put me in mind, that Lord Sandwich had told him no others of his countrymen were to come to England.

If there had been the most distant probability of any ship being again sent to New Zealand, I would have brought the two youths of that country home with me, as both of them were very desirous of continuing with us. Tiarooa, the eldest, was an exceedingly well-disposed young man, with strong natural sense, and capable of receiving any instruction. He seemed to be very sensible of the inferiority of his own country to these islands, and resigned himself, though perhaps with reluctance, to

end his days in ease and plenty in Huaheine. But the other was so strongly attached to us that he was taken out of the ship, and carried ashore by force. He was a witty smart boy, and on that account much noticed on board.'

As soon as the boat in which Omai was conveyed ashore had returned with the remainder of the hawser to the ship, we hoisted her in, and stood over for Ulietea without delay. The next morning, which was the 3d of November, we made sail round the southern end of that island, for the harbour of Ohamaneno. We met with variable light airs and calms alternately, so that at twelve o'clock we were still at the distance of a league from the mouth of the harbour; and while we were thus detained, Oreo, the chief of the island, with his son and son-in-law, came off to pay us a visit. All the boats were now hoisted out, and sent a-head to tow, being assisted by a slight southerly breeze. This soon failing, and being succeeded by an easterly one, which blew right out of the harbour, we were obliged to anchor at its entrance, about two o'clock, and warp in, which employed us till night. We were no sooner within the harbour than our ships were surrounded with canoes, filled with the natives, who brought a supply of fruits and hogs, which they exchanged for our commodities.

The following day the Resolution was moored close to the northern shore, at the head of the harbour, and the Discovery alongside the southern shore. Captain Cook in the mean time returned Oreo's visit, and presented that chief with a red-feathered cap from Tongataboo, a shirt, a linen gown, and a few other things of less value. Oreo

and so
board
servato
ments
Capta
the su
with a
riation
early
named
obser
quet
intell
detac
wards
Capt
affair
after
be b
howe
imag
findi
W
the
com
henc
the
and
side
the
tha
on
wit
the

ne. But and some of his friends then accompanied him on
at he was board to dinner. On Thursday, the 6th, the ob-
by force. servatories were set up, and the necessary instru-
account ments carried on shore. The two succeeding days,
conveyed Captain Cook, Mr King, and Mr Bailey, observed
the haw- the sun's azimuths, both on shore and on board,
ood over with all the compasses, in order to discover the va-
morning, riation. Nothing remarkable happened till very
ail round early in the morning of the 13th, when a marine,
rbout of named John Harrison, who was sentinel at the
airs and observatories, deserted, taking with him his mus-
we were quet and accoutrements. As soon as we gained
mouth of intelligence which way he had gone, a party was
detained, detached in search of him; but they returned to-
and son- wards the evening without success. The next day
he boats Captain Cook applied to the chief concerning this
ow, be- affair, who promised to send a party of the islanders
. This after the fugitive, and gave us hopes that he should
easterly be brought back in the course of that day. This
we were however did not happen; and we had reason to
o'clock, imagine that the chief had taken no steps towards
t. We finding him.

We had at this time a considerable number of
our ships the natives about our ships, and several thefts were
the na- committed, the consequence of which being appre-
l hogs, hended by them, very few of them came to visit us
moored the next morning. Oreo himself caught the alarm,
he har- and fled with his whole family. Captain Cook con-
uthern sidered this as a good opportunity to insist upon
turned their delivering up the deserter; and having heard
a red- that he was then at a place called Hamoa, situate
linen on the other side of the island, he repaired thither
Oreo with two armed boats, attended by a native. In
their way they met with the chief, who also em-

barked with them. The captain with a few of his men landing about a mile and a half from the spot, marched up to it with great expedition, lest the sight of the boats should give the alarm, and allow the offender sufficient time to make his escape to the mountains. This precaution proved unnecessary; for the natives of that part of the island having obtained information of the captain's approach, were prepared to deliver up the fugitive. He was found with his musquet lying before him, seated betwixt two women, who, the instant that the captain entered the house, rose up to plead in his vindication. As such proceedings deserved to be discouraged, the captain, with a stern look, bid them be gone, upon which they burst into tears, and retired. Paha, the chief of that district, now came with a sucking-pig and a plantain-tree, which he was on the point of presenting to Captain Cook, as a peace-offering, who rejected it; and having ordered the chief to quit his presence, embarked with Harrison in one of the boats, and returned to the ships. After this harmony was speedily restored. The delinquent made no other excuse for his conduct than that the natives had enticed him away, which perhaps was in a great measure true, as Paha and the two women above mentioned had been at the ship the day before his desertion. As he had remained at his station till within a few minutes of the time in which he was to have been relieved by another, the punishment he received was not very severe.

About a fortnight after we had arrived in Ulie-tea, Omai dispatched two of his people in a canoe, with intelligence that he continued undisturbed by the inhabitants of Huaheine, and that every thing

succeeded
in kidn
with a r
another
addition
captain
the 18th
kid.

On V
vered t
proceed
islands.
follows:
Isles to
siderabl
formed
weather
occasio
all poss
two shi
searchin
in five
New-A
latitud
days;
into th
of that
in woo
in por
Cook
1st of
ward
stance
eaguer

succeeded with him, except that his goat had died in kidding. This information was accompanied with a request that captain Cook would send him another goat, and also two axes. Pleased with this additional opportunity of serving his friend, the captain sent back the messengers to Huaheine, on the 18th, with the axes, and a male and female kid.

On Wednesday, the 19th, the commodore delivered to captain Clerke his instructions how to proceed in case of separation, after quitting these islands. The purport of these instructions was as follows: Whereas the passage from the Society Isles to the northern coast of America was of considerable length, and as a part of it must be performed in the depth of winter, when boisterous weather must be expected, which might perhaps occasion a separation, captain Clerke should take all possible care to prevent this; but that if the two ships should chance to be separated, he, after searching for captain Cook, and not finding him in five days, was to proceed towards the coast of New-Albion, and endeavour to fail in with it in the latitude of 45° , where he was to cruize for him ten days; and not seeing him in that time, was to put into the first convenient harbour in or to the north of that latitude, to obtain refreshments, and take in wood and water: that, during his continuance in port, he was constantly to look out for captain Cook; and if the latter did not join him before the 1st of April following, he was to proceed northward to the latitude of 56° , where, at such a distance from the coast as did not exceed fifteen leagues, he was to cruize for him till the 10th of

May; and not finding him, was to proceed on a northerly course, and attempt to discover a passage into the Atlantic Ocean, either through Hudson's or Baffin's Bays, as directed by the instructions of the board of Admiralty: that, if he should fail in those endeavours, he was to repair to the harbour of St Peter and St Paul, in Kamtschatka, and pass the winter there; but that if he could not procure refreshments at that port, he was at liberty to go where he should think proper, leaving with the governor, before his departure, an account of his destination, to be delivered to captain Cook on his arrival; and that, in the spring of the year following (1779) he was to return to the port above mentioned: that if he then received no further orders from captain Cook, so as to justify his pursuing any other measures than those which were pointed out in the instructions of the Lords of the Admiralty, his future proceedings were to be directed by them; and that, in case of being prevented, by illness or any other cause, from carrying these and the instructions of their Lordships into execution, he was to leave them with the officer who was next in command.

While we lay moored to the shore, we scrubbed both sides of the bottoms of our vessels, and also fixed some plates of tin under the binds. These plates captain Cook received from the ingenious Mr Pelham, secretary to the commissioners for victualling the royal navy, for the purpose of trying whether tin would succeed as well as copper in sheathing the bottoms of ships.

On Monday the 24th, in the morning, the commodore was informed that two of the Discovery's

people
sing.
that t
night
As th
tinue
probab
with
two a
out in
evenin
the is
to co
ceived
seek
was
gence
the is
sons
these
give
sertic
Cook
hims
temp
acco
pani
out
east
the
to s
tain
But
pect
v

people, one of whom was a midshipman, were missing. Not long after, we learned from the natives that they had embarked in a canoe the preceding night, and were now at the other end of the island. As the midshipman had expressed a desire of continuing at one end of these islands, it was extremely probable that he and his companion had gone off with that intent. Captain Clerke therefore, with two armed boats, and a detachment of marines, set out in quest of the fugitives, but returned in the evening without success. From the conduct of the islanders, he was of opinion that they intended to conceal the deserters, and with this view had deceived him with false information, directing him to seek for them where they could not be found. He was not mistaken; for, the next morning, intelligence was brought, that the two runaways were in the isle of Otaha. These not being the only persons in the ships who were desirous of remaining at these favourite islands, it was necessary, in order to give an effectual discouragement to any further desertion, to recover them at all events. Captain Cook therefore determined to go in pursuit of them himself, having observed that the natives seldom attempted to amuse him with false information. He accordingly set out with two armed boats, accompanied by Oreo himself. They proceeded, without stopping at any place, till they came to the eastern side of Otaha, where they put ashore; and the chief dispatched a man before them, with orders to seize the fugitives, and keep them till the captain and his attendants should arrive with the boats. But when they had got to the place where they expected to find them, they were informed that they

had quitted this island, and gone to Bolabola the preceding day. The captain, not choosing to follow them thither, returned to the ships, with a full determination to have recourse to a measure which, he had reason to believe, would compel the natives to restore them.

On the 26th, soon after the break of day, Oreo, with his son, daughter, and son-in-law, having come on board the Resolution, captain Cook resolved to detain the three last till our deserters should be delivered up. With this view captain Clerke invited them on board his ship, and as soon as they arrived in his cabin, a sentinel was placed at the door, and the window secured. This proceeding greatly surprised them; and captain Clerke having explained the reason of it, they burst into tears, and begged he would not kill them. He assured them he would not, and that the moment his people were brought back they should be released. This, however, did not remove their uneasiness, and they bewailed their fate in silent sorrow. The chief being with captain Cook when he received intelligence of this affair, immediately mentioned it to him, imagining that this step had been taken without his knowledge and approbation. The captain instantly undeceived him, and then he began to entertain apprehensions with respect to his own situation, and his countenance indicated the greatest perturbation of mind. But the captain soon quieted his fears, by telling him that he was at liberty to quit the ship whenever he chose, and to take such steps towards the recovery of our two men as he should judge best calculated for that purpose; and that, if he should meet with success, his friends on

board the
confinem
carried a
chief's
country
make th
time to
justify a
to such
tives up
remove,
tion int
present
ved fro
safety,
for the
bers of
canoes,
loud ex
was th
from e
a dism
their h
consid
The
with a
inform
ing hi
back.
Oreo
Cook
enjoin
and t

board the Discovery should be released from their confinement; if not, that they should certainly be carried away with us. The captain added, that the chief's conduct, as well as that of many of his countrymen, in not only assisting these two men to make their escape, but in endeavouring at this very time to prevail upon others to follow them, would justify any measure that would serve to put a stop to such proceedings. This explanation of the motives upon which the commodore acted seemed to remove, in a great degree, that general consternation into which Oreo and his people, who were present, were at first thrown. But, though relieved from all apprehensions with regard to their own safety, they were still under the deepest concern for the prisoners on board the Discovery. Numbers of them went under the stern of that ship in canoes, and lamented their captivity with long and loud exclamations. The name of Poedooa (for that was the appellation of Oreo's daughter) resounded from every quarter; and the women not only made a dismal howling, but struck their bosoms, and cut their heads with shark's teeth, which occasioned a considerable effusion of blood.

The chief now dispatched a canoe to Bolabola, with a message to Opoony, king of that island, informing him of what had happened, and requesting him to seize the two deserters, and send them back. The messenger, who was the father of Oreo's son-in-law Pootoe, came to receive captain Cook's commands before his departure, who strictly enjoined him not to return without the fugitives, and to tell Opoony from him, that if they had left

the isle of Bolabola he must send canoes in pursuit of them.

The impatient natives, not thinking proper to trust to the return of our people for the release of the prisoners, meditated an attempt which, if it had not been prevented, might have involved them in still greater distress. Between five and six o'clock, captain Cook, who was then on shore, abreast of the ship, observed that all their canoes in and about the harbour began to move off. He inquired in vain for the cause of this, till our people, calling to us from the Discovery, informed us that some of the islanders had seized captain Clerke and Mr Gore, as they were walking at a small distance from the ships. The commodore, struck with the boldness of this scheme of retaliation, which seemed to counteract him in his own way, instantly commanded his people to arm; and in a few minutes a strong party, under the command of Mr King, was sent to the rescue of our two gentlemen. Two armed boats and a party under Mr Williamson were dispatched at the same time, to intercept the flying canoes in their retreat to the shore. These detachments had scarcely gone out of sight when intelligence arrived that we had been misinformed, upon which they were immediately called in.

It manifestly appeared, however, from several corroborating particulars, that the natives had actually formed the design of seizing captain Clerke; and they even made no secret in speaking of it the following day. But the principal part of their plan of operations was to have laid hold of the person of captain Cook. He was accustomed to bathe every evening in the fresh water; on which occasion he

frequent
pecting
solved
wise, i
Cook,
care to
had ca
to go
Oreo,
commo
to the
not be
notwit
Having
sign, c
had se
over.
they fi
It was
succee
done c
cept t
ing, p
their s
islands
them,
musqu

Th
had b

* It
safety
which
author

frequently went alone, and always unarmed. Expecting him to go this evening as usual, they had resolved upon seizing him and captain Clerke likewise, if he had accompanied him. But captain Cook, after confining the chief's family, had taken care to avoid putting himself in their power, and had cautioned captain Clerke and the officers not to go to any considerable distance from the ships. Oreo, in the course of the afternoon, asked our commodore three or four times, if he would not go to the bathing-place; till at length finding he could not be prevailed upon, he retired with his people, notwithstanding all our entreaties to the contrary. Having no suspicion at this time of their design, captain Cook imagined that a sudden panic had seized them, which would probably be soon over. Being disappointed with respect to him, they fixed upon those who were more in their power. It was a fortunate circumstance that they did not succeed in their design, and that no mischief was done on the occasion; no musquets being fired except two or three to stop the canoes, to which firing, perhaps, captain Clerke and Mr Gore owed their safety*, for, at that moment, a party of the islanders, armed with clubs, were marching toward's them, but dispersed on hearing the report of the musquets.

This conspiracy was first discovered by a girl who had been brought from Huaheine by one of our

* It is not improbable that they were also indebted for their safety to captain Clerke's walking with a pistol in his hand, which he once fired. We mention this circumstance on the authority of captain King.

officers. She happening to overhear some of the Ulieteans say that they would seize Messrs Clerke and Gore, she immediately ran to acquaint the first of our people that she met with. Those who had been intrusted with the execution of the design, threatened to put her to death as soon as we should quit Ulietea, for disappointing them. Being aware of this, we contrived that the girl's friends should come a day or two afterwards, and take her out of the ship, to convey her to a place where she might remain concealed till she should find an opportunity of returning to Huaheine.

On Thursday the 27th, we took down our observatories, and carried on board whatever we had ashore, we then unmoored the ships, and moved a little way down the harbour, where we anchored again. Towards the afternoon, the natives, shaking off their apprehensions, gathered round and on board our ships as usual; and the unpleasing transactions of the preceding day seemed to be almost forgotten by both parties. In the succeeding night the wind blew in hard squalls, which were accompanied with heavy showers of rain. In one of these squalls the cable by which the Resolution was riding at anchor parted; but, as we had another anchor ready to let go, the ship was quickly brought up again.

No account of our two fugitives having been received from Bolabola, Oreo now set out for that island, desiring captain Cook to follow him the next day with the ships. This was the captain's intention, but the wind prevented our getting out to sea. The same wind, however, which detained us in the harbour, brought back Oreo with

the two c
ed Utaha
able, for
islands ly
ed, they
little isla
hended b
brought
covery w
the term
commod

The
north an
the 7th
the mo
light bre
ceding
all quar
supply
time we
not tot
lent suc
two or
these p
and wa

The
and mo
islands
perhap
to the
is only
and th
ber o
they

the two deserters, from Bolabola. They had reached Utaha on the night of desertion, but being unable, for the want of wind, to get to any of the islands lying to the eastward, as they at first intended, they proceeded to Bolabola, and thence to a little island called Toobaee, where they were apprehended by Pootoe's father. As soon as they were brought on board, the three prisoners in the Discovery were restored to their liberty. Such was the termination of an affair which had given the commodore much trouble and vexation.

The wind, continuing constantly between the north and west, kept us in the harbour till Sunday the 7th of December, when, at eight o'clock in the morning, we weighed and made sail, with a light breeze at the northeast point. During the preceding week, we had been visited by persons from all quarters of the island, who afforded a plentiful supply of hogs and green plantains, so that the time we remained wind-bound in the harbour was not totally lost; for green plantains are an excellent succedaneum for bread, and will keep good for two or three weeks. Besides being furnished with these provisions, we also took in plenty of wood and water.

The Ulieteans appeared to be, in general, smaller and more black than the natives of the adjacent islands, and seemed also less orderly, which may, perhaps, be owing to their having become subject to the inhabitants of Bolabola. Oreo, their chief, is only a kind of deputy of the Bolabolan monarch; and the conquest seems to have diminished the number of subordinate chiefs resident among them: they are, therefore, less immediately under the eye

of those whose interest it is to enforce a proper obedience. Though Ulietea is now reduced to this state of humiliating dependence, it was formerly, as we were informed, the most eminent of this group of islands, and was probably the first seat of government; for we were told that the present royal family of Otaheite derives its descent from that which ruled here before the late revolution. The dethroned king of Ulietea, whose name is Ooroo, resides at Huaheine, furnishing, in his own person, an instance not only of the instability of power, but also of the respect paid by these islanders to particular families of princely rank; for they allow Ooroo to retain all the ensigns which are appropriated by them to royalty, notwithstanding his having been deprived of his dominions. We observed a similar instance of this during our stay at Ulietea, where one of our occasional visitants was captain's Cook's old friend Oree, late chief of Huaheine. He still maintained his consequence, and was constantly attended by a numerous retinue.

Having taken our leave of Ulietea, we steered for Bolabola. Our principal reason for visiting this island was, to procure one of the anchors which had been lost at Otaheite by Monsieur de Bougainville. This, we were informed, had been afterwards found by the natives there, and sent by them to Opoony, the chief of Bolabola. It was not on account of our being in want of anchors that we were anxious to get possession of it, but having parted with all our hatchets, and other iron tools and implements in purchasing refreshments, we were now obliged to create a fresh assortment of trading articles, by fabricating them from the spare iron we could find

on bo
been
suppo
in a g
mater
Opoo
Or
Uliet
most
have
set, b
ened
On th
harbo
being
near
entra
Th
porte
at th
withi
twen
turn
temp
tide
and
shou
Coo
the
atte
in f
A
was
con

on board, and even the greatest part of that had been already expended. Captain Cook, therefore, supposed Monsieur de Bougainville's anchor would in a great measure supply our want of this useful material, and he did not entertain a doubt that Opoony might be induced to part with it.

Oreo, accompanied by six or eight others from Ulietea, attended us to Bolabola; and, indeed, most of the natives, except the chief, would gladly have taken a passage with us to England. At sunset, being off the south point of Bolabola, we shortened sail, and passed the night making short boards. On the 8th, at day-break, we made sail for the harbour on the west side of the island. The wind being scant, it was nine o'clock before we were near enough to send away a boat to sound the entrance.

The morning, when he returned with the boat, reported, that the entrance of the harbour was rocky at the bottom, but that there was good ground within, and the depth of water twenty-five and twenty-seven fathoms; and that there was room to turn the ships in. Upon this information, we attempted to work the ships in; but the wind and tide being against us, we made two or three trips, and found it could not be accomplished till the tide should turn in our favour. Whereupon captain Cook gave up the design of carrying the ships into the harbour, and, embarking in one of the boats, attended by Oreo and his companions, was rowed in for the island.

As soon as they were got ashore, the commodore was introduced to Opoony, surrounded by a vast concourse of people. The necessary formality of

compliments being over, he requested the chief to give him the anchor; and, to induce him to comply with the request, produced the present he intended for him. It consisted of a linen night-gown, some gauze handkerchiefs, a shirt, a looking-glass, some beads and toys, and six axes. Opoony, however, refused to accept the present till the commodore had received the anchor, and ordered three persons to go and deliver it to him, with directions to receive from him what he thought proper in return. With these messengers we set out in our boats for a neighbouring island, where the anchor had been deposited, but it was neither so large nor so perfect as we expected. By the mark that was upon it, we found that it had originally weighed seven hundred pounds; but it now wanted the two palms, the ring, and part of the shank. The reason of Opoony's refusing captain Cook's present was now apparent; he doubtless supposed that the anchor, in its present state, was so much inferior to it in value, that, when he saw it, he would be displeased. The commodore, notwithstanding, took the anchor as he found it, and sent the whole of the present which he at first intended. This negotiation being completed, the commodore returned on board, hoisted in the boats, and made sail to the north. While we were hoisting in the boats, we were visited by some of the natives, who came off in three or four canoes to see the ships. They brought with them one pig, and a few cocoa-nuts.

Had we remained there till the next day, we should probably have been supplied with plenty of provisions; and the natives would doubtless be disappointed when they found we were gone: but,

having
board,
we had
our vo
Ote
the we
though
satisfac
by him
place
To
peaked
the ea
or bus
like th
cocoa-
little i
of its
produ
Co
only c
ble th
quer
and i
capta
duce
ed;
the l
U
the m
sider
were
adm
deg

having already a good stock of hogs and fruit on board, and not many articles left to purchase more, we had no inducement to defer the prosecution of our voyage.

Oteavanooa, the harbour of Bolabola, situate on the west side of the island, is very capacious; and, though we did not enter it, captain Cook had the satisfaction of being informed, by persons employed by him for that purpose, that it was a very proper place for the reception of ships.

Towards the middle of this island is a lofty double-peaked mountain, which appeared to be barren on the east side, but on the west side had some trees or bushes. The lower grounds, towards the sea, like the other islands of this ocean, are covered with cocoa-palms, and bread-fruit trees. There are many little islets that surround it, which add to the number of its inhabitants, and to the amount of its vegetable productions.

Considering the small extent of Bolabola, being only eight leagues in circumference, it is remarkable that its people should have been able to conquer Ulietea and Otaha; the former of which island is alone more than double its size. In each of captain Cook's three voyages, the war which produced this great revolution was frequently mentioned; and as it may amuse the reader we shall give the history of it as related by themselves.

Ulietea and Otaha had long been friends; or, as the natives emphatically express it, they were considered as two brothers, whose views and interests were the same. The island of Huaheine was also admitted as their friend, but not in so eminent a degree. Like a traitor, Otaha leagued with Bola-

bola, jointly to attack Ulietea, whose people required the assistance of their friends of Huaheine against these united powers. The inhabitants of Bolabola were encouraged by a prophetess who predicted their success: and that they might rely upon her predictions, she desired a man might be sent to a particular part of the sea, where from a great depth would arise a stone. He was accordingly sent in a canoe to the place specified, and was going instantly to dive after the stone, when, behold, it spontaneously started up to the surface, and came immediately into his hand! All the people were astonished at the sight: the stone was deemed sacred, and deposited in the house of the *Eatooa*, and is still preserved, as a proof that this prophetess had great influence with the divinity. Elevated with the hopes of victory, the canoes of Bolabola attacked those of Ulietea and Huaheine; the encounter was of long duration, and, notwithstanding the miracle, the Bolabola fleet would have been vanquished had not that of Otaha arrived at the critical moment. The fortune of the day was now turned, and their enemies were totally defeated. Two days after the men of Bolabola invaded Huaheine, of which they made themselves masters, it being weakly defended, as most of its warriors were then absent. Many of its fugitives, however, having got to Otaheite, there related their lamentable tale. This so affected their own countrymen, and those of Ulietea whom they found in that island, that they obtained their assistance. They were furnished with only ten fighting canoes, and with that inconsiderable force effected a landing at Huaheine, when dark at night, and taking the Bolabola men by surprise, killed many of

them, and
possessed
remains
chiefs.

ahaine v
plied to
equal sh
the allia
conquer
main su
are gov
king of

Such
been ob
ficient i
And re
few year
its com
being a
sion.

nated
Cook v
that pe
recent
to be s
reca,
tional

not ap
and hi
in one

The
and C
fame i
not d
It is

them, and dispersed the rest. Thus they again possessed themselves of their own island, which now remains independent, and is governed by its own chiefs. When the united fleets of Ulietea and Huaheine were defeated, the men of Bolabola were applied to by their allies of Otaha to be allowed an equal share of the conquests. This being refused, the alliance broke; and during the war Otaha was conquered, as well as Ulietea, both of which remain subject to Bolabola, the chiefs by whom they are governed being only deputies to Opoony, the king of that island.

Such was their history of the war. It has already been observed, that these people are extremely deficient in recollecting the exact dates of past events. And respecting this war, though it happened but a few years ago, we could only guess at the time of its commencement and duration, the natives not being able to satisfy our inquiries with any precision. The final conquest of Ulietea, which terminated the war, had been achieved before captain Cook was there in 1769; but it was very apparent that peace had not been long restored, as marks of recent hostilities having been committed were then to be seen. By attending to the age of Teerectareea, the present chief of Huaheine, some additional collateral proof may be gathered. He did not appear to be above ten or twelve years of age, and his father, we were informed, had been killed in one of the engagements.

The Bolabolans, since the conquest of Ulietea and Otaha, are considered as invincible; and their fame is so far extended, that even at Otaheite, if not dreaded, they are respected for their valour. It is asserted that they never fly from an enemy,

and that they always are victorious against an equal number of the other islanders. Their neighbours too ascribe much to the superiority of their god, who, they believed, detained us by contrary winds at Ulietea.

The estimation in which the Bolabola men are held at Otaheite may be gathered from Monsieur Bougainville's anchor having been sent to their sovereign. The intention of transporting the Spanish bull to their island must be ascribed to the same cause. And they already possessed a third European curiosity, a male animal brought to Otaheite by the Spaniards. This animal had been so imperfectly described by the natives, that we had been much puzzled to conjecture what it could be. Some good, however, generally arises out of evil. When captain Clerke's deserters were brought back from Bolabola, they told us the animal had been shown to them, and that it was a ram. If our men had not deserted, it is probable we should never have known this.

In consequence of this intelligence, captain Cook, when he landed to meet Opoony, carried an ewe on shore, of the Cape of Good Hope breed, by which he has probably laid the foundation for a breed of sheep at Bolabola. He also left with Oreo, at Ulietea, two goats, and an English boar and sow; so that the race of hogs will be considerably improved at Otaheite, and all the neighbouring islands; and they will perhaps be stocked with many valuable European animals.

When this is really the case, these islands will be unrivalled in abundance and variety of refreshments for the supply of navigators. Even in their

present
the inh
which h
product

If w
goods,
salted a
to last
hausted
Islands,
axes in
alone h
salt tha
quisite

The
adopted
The ho
they w
meat w
mit the
it was
vered w
four or
fully ex
the lea
wa, se
headed
again
but th
was ge
and w
though
was to
maince

present state they are hardly to be excelled. When the inhabitants are not disturbed by intestine broils, which has been the case for several years past, their productions are numerous and plentiful.

If we had possessed a greater assortment of goods, and a proper quantity of salt, we might have salted as much pork as would have been sufficient to last both ships almost a year. But we quite exhausted our trading commodities at the Friendly Islands, Otaheite, and its neighbourhood. Our axes in particular were nearly gone, with which alone hogs were in general to be purchased. The salt that remained on board was not more than requisite for curing fifteen puncheons of meat.

The following process of curing pork has been adopted by captain Cook in his several voyages. The hogs were killed in the evening, when cleaned they were cut up and the bone taken out. The meat was salted while it was hot, laid so as to permit the juices to drain from it till the next morning; it was then salted again, put into a cask, and covered with pickle. It remained in this situation for four or five days, when it was taken out and carefully examined; and if any of it appeared to be in the least tainted, which was sometimes the case, it was separated from the rest, which was repacked, headed up, and filled with good pickle. It was again examined in about eight or ten days time; but there appeared to be no necessity for it, as it was generally found to be all perfectly cured. Bay and white salt mixed together answers the best, though either of them will do alone. Great care was taken that none of the large blood vessels remained in the meat, and not too much should be

packed together at the first salting, lest those pieces which are in the middle should heat, and hinder the salt from penetrating them. In tropical climates meat ought not to be salted in rainy sultry weather.

Europeans having of late so frequently visited these islands, they may, on that account, have been induced to breed a larger stock of hogs; knowing that whenever we come they may be certain of receiving what they esteem a valuable consideration for them. They daily expect the Spaniards at Otaheite, and in two or three years time they will doubtless expect the English there, as well as at the other islands. It is useless to assure them that you will not return, for they suppose you cannot avoid it; though none of them either know or inquire the reason of your coming. It would perhaps have been better for these people to have been ignorant of our superiority, than after once knowing it to be abandoned to their original incapacity. They cannot indeed be restored to their former happy mediocrity, if the intercourse between us should be discontinued.

It is in a manner incumbent on the Europeans to pay them occasional visits, once in three or four years, to supply them with those articles which we by introducing have given them a predilection for. The want of such supplies may be severely felt, when it is too late to return to their old imperfect contrivances, which they now despise and discard. When the iron tools with which we have furnished them are worn out, their own will be almost forgotten. A stone hatchet is now as great a curiosity among them as an iron one was seven or

eight y
stone is
substitu
they an
of the
sought
Kniv
mation
rivalled
merely
as the
ticle w
haps b
or whic
so evid
high i
miserab
what a
ence,
ignora
In c
publis
which
many
ing st
to ex
not fa
Ha
these
of ou
lowin
Mr A
of th

eight years ago; and a chissel made of bone or stone is no where to be seen. Spike nails have been substituted in the room of the latter articles; and they are weak enough to imagine that their store of them is inexhaustible, for they were no longer sought after.

Knives happened at this time to be in high estimation at Ulietea; and axes and hatchets bore unrivalled sway at all the islands. Respecting articles merely ornamental, these islanders are as changeable as the most polished European nations; for an article which may be prized by them to-day may perhaps be rejected by them to-morrow, as a fashion or whim may alter. But our iron implements are so evidently useful that they must continue to be high in their estimation. They would indeed be miserable if they should cease to receive supplies of what appears necessary to their comfortable existence, as they are destitute of the materials, and ignorant of the art of fabricating them.

In our former relations too much has already been published respecting some of the modes of life which rendered Otaheite so pleasing an abode to many of our people; and if we could add any finishing strokes to that picture, we should be unwilling to exhibit a view of such licentious manners as cannot fail to be disgusting.

Having now concluded our account respecting these islands, which stand so conspicuous in the list of our discoveries, we refer the reader to the following descriptions, for which we are indebted to Mr Anderson.

‘ After some prefatory remarks on the accounts of the successive voyages of captain Wallis, Mon-

sieur de Bougainville, and captain Cook, Mr Anderson begins to relate such particulars concerning Otaheite and its neighbouring islands as he was able to procure from Omai, or by conversing with the other natives.

For the greatest part of the year the wind blows from between east-southeast and east-northeast. It sometimes blows with considerable force, and is called by the natives *Maaraee*. When the wind blows strong the weather is usually cloudy, with some rain; but when it is more moderate, it is clear, settled, and serene: if the wind should veer to southeast, or south-southeast, it blows more gently, and is called *Maoai*. In December and January, when the sun is nearly vertical, both the winds and weather are very variable; but it often blows from west-northwest, or northwest. This wind is called *Toerou*; and is usually attended by cloudy weather, and sometimes rain. It seldom continues more than five or six days without interruption, and is the only wind that will permit the inhabitants of the islands to leeward to visit this in their canoes. If the wind is still more northerly, it has the different appellation of *Era-potaia*. The wind from southwest and west-southwest is more frequent than the former, and is usually gentle, with occasional calms and breezes, yet it sometimes blows in very brisk squalls. The weather is then generally cloudy and rainy, with a close hot air, often accompanied with much thunder and lightning. It is called by the natives *Etoa*.

Though the natives have no very accurate knowledge of these changes, they pretend to have drawn some conclusions from their effects. When the sea

has a ho
they say
harshly;
the reve

The
the mos
hills are
vered to
the rock
ducing
valleys
with ex
the bel
can vie
getatio
ting riv
viding
fertiliz

The
scatter
along
our sh
perfect
tion fo
and re
deligh
to tra
conve
I felt
been
try,
the c
their
not i

has a hollow sound, and dashes mildly on the shore, they say it portends good weather; but if it sounds harshly, and the waves rapidly succeed each other, the reverse is to be expected.

The southeast part of Otaheite affords one of the most luxuriant prospects in the universe. The hills are high, steep, and craggy; but they are covered to the very summits with trees and shrubs, the rocks seeming to possess the property of producing their verdant clothing. The lower land and valleys teem with various productions, that grow with exuberant vigour, and convey to the mind of the beholders an idea, that no country upon earth can vie with this in the strength and beauty of vegetation: nature has been equally liberal in distributing rivulets, which glide through every valley, dividing as they approach the sea into several branches, fertilizing the lands through which they run.

The habitations of the natives are irregularly scattered upon the flat land; and many of them along the shore afforded us a delightful scene from our ships; especially as the sea within the reef is perfectly still, and affords at all times a safe navigation for the inhabitants, who are often seen passing and repassing in their canoes. On beholding these delightful scenes I have often regretted my inability to transmit such a description of them as would convey an impression somewhat similar to what I felt, who have been fortunate enough to have been on the spot. The natural fertility of the country, combined with the mildness and serenity of the climate, has rendered the natives so careless in their cultivation, that the smallest traces of it cannot in many places be discovered, though overflow-

ing with the richest productions. The cloth plant and the *ava*, or intoxicating pepper, are almost the only things to which they show any attention.

The bread-fruit tree is never planted, but springs from the roots of the old ones, which spread themselves near the surface of the ground. Hence we may observe, that the inhabitants of Otaheite, instead of being under a necessity of planting their bread, will rather be obliged to prevent its progress, which is perhaps sometimes done, to afford room for a different sort of trees, which may enable them to make some variety in their food.

The principal of these trees are the cocoa-nut and plantain; the first of which requires no attention after it appears a foot or two above the ground; but the plantain requires some care in the cultivation; for about three months after it shoots up it begins to bear fruit, during which time it puts forth young shoots, which supply a succession of fruit, the old stocks being cut down as the fruit is taken off.

The products of the island are more remarkable for their great abundance than for their variety, and curiosities here are not very numerous. Among these may be reckoned a large lake of fresh water on the top of one of the highest mountains, at the distance of almost two days journey. It is remarkable for its depth, and abounds with eels of an enormous size. This being esteemed the greatest natural curiosity of the country, travellers who come from other islands are usually asked, among the first things, at their return, whether they have seen it. There is also a small pond of water on this island, which has a yellow sediment at the bot-

tom.
but ha
those
bathe

On
marka
gatabo
a robu
ving a
differe
rate in
it was
accust
mende

Th
those
tries
men v
sidera
them
are ti
robust
from
super
lead
and a
conso
ing a
lang
boxi
effor
activ
the

A

tom. It has the appearance of being very good, but has an offensive taste, and often proves fatal to those who drink a quantity of it; and those who bathe in it break out in blotches.

On our arrival here we were struck with the remarkable contrast between the inhabitants of Tongataboo and those of Otaheite, the former being of a robust make and dark colour, and the latter having a distinguished delicacy and whiteness. That difference, however, did not immediately preponderate in favour of the Otaheiteans; and when it did, it was perhaps occasioned more by our becoming accustomed to them, the marks which had recommended the others beginning now to be forgotten.

The women, however, of Otaheite possess all those delicate characteristics which in many countries distinguish them from the other sex. The men wear their beards long here, and their hair considerably longer than at Tongataboo, which gives them a very different appearance. The Otaheiteans are timid and fickle. They are not so muscular and robust as the Friendly Islanders, arising, perhaps, from their being accustomed to less action; the superior fertility of their country enabling them to lead a more indolent life. They have a plumpness and smoothness of the skin, which, though more consonant with our ideas of beauty, is far from being an advantage, and is attended with a kind of languor in all their motions. This is visible in their boxing and wrestling, which display only the feeble efforts of children, if compared to the vigour and activity with which such exercises are performed at the Friendly Islands.

As personal endowments are in high estimation

among them, they have various methods of improving them, according to their ideas of beauty. Among the *Erreos*, or unmarried men, especially those of some consequence, it is customary to undergo a kind of physical operation, to render them fair, which is done by continuing a month or two in the house, wearing a great quantity of clothes the whole time, and eating nothing but bread-fruit, which they say is remarkably efficacious in whitening the skin. They also intimate, that their corpulence and colour, at other times, depend upon their food, being obliged as the seasons vary to use different food at different times.

Nine-tenths at least of their common diet consist of vegetable food; and the *mabee*, or fermented bread-fruit, which is an article in almost every meal, prevents costiveness, and has a singular effect in producing a coolness about them, which was not perceivable in us who fed on animal food. To this temperate course of life may perhaps be attributed their having so few diseases among them. Indeed they mention only five or six chronic or national disorders, among which are the dropsy and the *fefai*, mentioned as frequent at Tongataboo. This was, however, before the arrival of the Europeans; for we have added a disease to their catalogue, which abundantly supplies the place of all others, and is become almost universal, and for which they seem to have no effectual remedy. The priests indeed administer a medley of simples, but they acknowledge it never cures them. They admit, however, that in some few cases nature alone has exterminated the poison of this loathsome disease, and produced a perfect recovery. They say also, that

those i
handlin

The
sition u
quently
their e
ration,
from d
plackin
and las
belly :
sions.

cence,
unsulli
rather
lively,
tune,
labour
ver pr
approa
vivacit
the gr
the cr
ever o
melan

Di
aims t
their
sions
delig
const
ever,
more
in w

those infected with it communicate it to others by handling them, or feeding on the same utensils.

They show an openness and generosity of disposition upon all occasions. Omai, indeed, has frequently said that they exercise cruelty in punishing their enemies, and torment them with great deliberation, sometimes tearing out small pieces of flesh from different parts of the body; at other times plucking out the eyes; then cutting off the nose; and lastly completing the business, by opening the belly: but this is only on very extraordinary occasions. If cheerfulness results from conscious innocence, one would imagine their whole lives had been unsullied with a crime. This, however, may be rather imputed to their feelings, which, though lively, are never permanent. Under any misfortune, after the critical moment is past, they never labour under the appearance of anxiety. Care never produces a wrinkle on their brow; even the approach of death does not deprive them of their vivacity. I have seen them when on the brink of the grave by disease, and when preparing to attack the enemy; but in neither of these cases have I ever observed their countenances overclouded with melancholy or dread.

Disposed, as they naturally are, to direct their aims to what will afford them ease or pleasure, all their amusements tend to excite their amorous passions; and their songs, with which they are greatly delighted, are directed to the same purpose. A constant succession of sensual enjoyment must, however, cloy, and they occasionally varied them to more refined subjects: they chanted their triumphs in war and their amusements in peace, their travels

and adventures, and the peculiar advantages of their own island.

This shows that they are immoderately fond of music; and though they did not relish our complicated compositions, they were much delighted with the more melodious sounds, when produced singly, as they in some degree resembled the simplicity of their own. They equally experience the soothing effects produced by particular kinds of motion, which in many cases will allay any perturbation of mind as successfully as music. Of this the following may serve as a remarkable instance. Walking one day about Matavai Point, I saw a man in a small canoe, paddling with such expedition, and looking so eagerly about him, as to command my whole attention. At first I supposed he had been pilfering from one of the ships, and was pursued; but he presently repeated his amusement. He proceeded from the shore to the place where the swell begins, and attentively watching its first motion, paddled swiftly before it, till he perceived it overtook him, and had sufficient strength to force his canoe before it with passing underneath. He then ceased paddling, and was carried along as rapidly as the wave, till he was landed upon the beach, when he started from his canoe, emptied it, and went in pursuit of another swell. He seemed to experience the most supreme delight, while he was thus swiftly and smoothly driven by the sea. His mind was so wholly occupied in this business, that though crowds of his countrymen were collected to observe our tents and ships, as being objects that were both rare and curious to them, he did not notice them in the least. Two or three of the na-

tives seemed
form h
able s
very fr

The
cally t
Friend
ciation
with
dered
and so
rative
above
many
the co

The
with t
ning o
casion
referri
tions,
imagi
med.

In
prete
know
imita
but,
twec
low,
inspe
he fi
flesh

tives drew near while I was observing him, and seemed to partake of his felicity, calling out to inform him when there was an appearance of a favourable swell. This exercise, which I understand is very frequent among them, is called *ehorooe*.

Though the language of Otaheite seems radically the same as that of New-Zealand and the Friendly Islands, it has not that guttural pronunciation, and is pruned of some of the consonants with which those dialects abound, which has rendered it, like the manners of the inhabitants, soft and soothing. It abounds with beautiful and figurative expressions, and is so copious that they have above twenty different names for the bread-fruit, as many for the *taro* root, and half that number for the cocoa-nut.

They have one expression corresponding exactly with the phraseology of the scriptures, viz. "Yearning of the bowels." They use it upon every occasion, when affected by the passions, constantly referring pain from grief, desire, and other affections, to the bowels, as the seat of it; where they imagine all operations of the mind are also performed.

In the arts they are extremely deficient; yet they pretend to perform cures in surgery which our knowledge in that branch has not enabled us to imitate. Simple fractures are bound up with splints; but, if a part of the bone be lost, they insert between the fractured ends a piece of wood made hollow, to supply its place. The *rapapo*, or surgeon, inspects the wound in about five or six days; when he finds the wood is partly covered by the growing flesh, and in as many more days visits the patient

a second time, when it is generally completely covered; and when he has acquired some strength he bathes in the water, and is restored.

Wounds, it is well known, will heal over leaden bullets, and there are some instances of their healing over other extraneous bodies. But what makes me entertain some doubt of the truth of this relation, is, that in those cases which fell under my observation they were far from being so dexterous. I was shown the stump of an arm which had been taken off, that had not the appearance of a skilful operation, after making a due allowance for their defective instruments. And I saw a man going about with a dislocated shoulder, some months after he had received the accident, from their being unacquainted with a method of reducing it, though it is one of the simplest operations of our surgery.

Fractures of the spine they know are mortal; and they also know, from experience, in what particular parts of the body wounds prove fatal. Their physical knowledge seems yet more limited, because perhaps their diseases are fewer than their accidents. In some cases, however, the priests administer the juices of herbs; and women afflicted with after-pains, or other complaints after child-bearing, use a remedy which seems unnecessary in a hot country. Having heated some stones, they lay a thick cloth over them, covered with a quantity of a small plant of the mustard kind, and over them is spread another cloth. On this they seat themselves, and sweat profusely, to obtain a cure. This method has been practised by the men, though ineffectually, for the cure of the venereal *lues*. It is remarkable that they have no emetic medicines here.

A fa
withsta
people
be owi
to over
ficiently
cise th
plenty.

In a
bread-f
rious ro
tains.
is first
or yam
but be
next ea
taro; a
sorts, c
which r
ter, a r
semble
West
very in
ing pla

A v
by the
they o
marine
their
afford
cordin
night,
allowe
by wa

A famine frequently happens in this island, notwithstanding its extreme fertility, in which many people are said to perish. Whether this calamity be owing to the scanty produce of some seasons, to over-population, or to wars, I have not been sufficiently informed; but it has taught them to exercise the strictest economy, even in the times of plenty.

In a scarcity of provision, when their yams and bread-fruit are consumed, they have recourse to various roots which grow uncultivated upon the mountains. The *patarra*, which is found in great plenty, is first used: it somewhat resembles a large potatoe, or yam; and when in its growing state is good, but becomes hard and stringy when old. They next eat two other roots, one of which appears like *taro*; and then the *choee*. Of this there are two sorts, one of which possesses deleterious qualities, which requires it to be sliced, and macerated in water, a night before it is baked for eating. It resembles, in this respect, the *cassava* root of the West Indies, but in the manner they dress it has a very insipid taste. This and the *patarra* are creeping plants, the latter having ternate leaves.

A very small portion of animal food is enjoyed by the lower class of people; and if at any time they obtain any, it is either fish, sea-eggs, or other marine productions, for pork hardly ever falls to their share. Only the *Eree de boi* is able to afford pork every day, and the inferior chiefs, according to their riches, perhaps once a week, a fortnight, or a month. Sometimes indeed they are not allowed that; for when the island is impoverished by war, or any other means, a prohibition is gran-

ted against the killing of hogs, which sometimes continues in force for several months, and even for a year or two. In such an interval the hogs have multiplied so fast, that there have been instances of their changing their domestic state, and becoming wild.

When this prohibition is taken off, the chiefs assemble at the king's habitation, each bringing with him a present of hogs. After this the king orders some of them to be killed, of which they all partake, and each returns to his own home, with full permission to kill as many as he pleases for his own use. On our arrival here such a prohibition was actually in force, at least in those districts under the immediate direction of Otoo. And when we quitted Oheitepeha, fearing we should not have gone to Matavai, he sent a messenger, assuring us, that as soon as the ships arrived there it should be taken off. We found it so; but our consumption of them was so great, that there is very little doubt but it would be laid on again, immediately after we had sailed. A prohibition is sometimes extended to fowls.

The *ava* is chiefly used among the better sort of people; but this beverage is differently prepared from that which we saw in the Friendly Islands. Here they pour a small quantity of water upon the root, and often bake, roast, or bruise the stalks, without chewing it before it is infused. They also bruise the leaves of the plant here, and pour water upon them as upon the root. It is not drank in large companies, in that sociable way which is practised among the people at Tongataboo; but it has more pernicious effects here, owing, perhaps,

to the m
instances

Many
were su
were ren
we saw
and the
buted to
rough,
occasion
degree
a practi
ing too
ingly,
lives.

The
first is
which
dine at
two an
They
in this
only o
cluded
of foo
dare n
partic
den th
dom p
sexes
up th

In
eating
On o

to the manner of its preparation, as we saw frequent instances of its intoxicating powers.

Many of us who had visited these islands before were surprised to find several of the natives who were remarkable for their size and corpulency, when we saw them last, now almost reduced to skeletons; and the cause of this alteration was universally attributed to the use of the *ava*. Their skins were dry, rough, and covered with scales; which they say occasionally fall off, and their skin becomes in some degree renewed. As an excuse for so destructive a practice, they allege it is to prevent their growing too corpulent; but it enervates them exceedingly, and probably shortens the duration of their lives.

Their meals at Otaheite are very frequent. The first is about two o'clock in the morning, after which they go to sleep; the next is at eight; they dine at eleven, and again, as Omai expressed it, at two and at five; and they go to supper at eight. They have adopted some very whimsical customs in this article of domestic life. The women are not only obliged to eat by themselves, but are even excluded from partaking of most of the better sorts of food. Turtle, or fish of the tunny kind, they dare not touch, though it is high in esteem; some particular sorts of the best plantains are also forbidden them; and even those of the first rank are seldom permitted to eat pork. The children of both sexes also eat apart; and the women usually serve up their own provisions.

In this, and many other customs relative to their eating, there is something exceedingly mysterious. On our inquiring into the reasons of it, we were

told it was necessary it should be so ; and that was the only answer we could receive, when we interrogated them upon that subject.

They are not so obscure and mysterious in their other customs respecting the females, especially with regard to their connections with the men. When a young man and woman, from mutual choice, agree to cohabit, the man makes a present to the father of the girl of the common necessities of life, as hogs, cloth, or canoes ; and if he supposes he has not received a valuable consideration for his daughter, he compels her to leave her former friend, and to cohabit with a person who may be more liberal. The man, indeed, is always at full liberty to make a new choice ; or, should his consort become a mother, he may destroy the child ; and afterwards either leave the woman, or continue his connection with her. But, if he adopts the child, and permits it to live, the man and woman are then considered as in the married state ; and, after that, they seldom separate. A man may, however, without being censured, join a more youthful partner to his first wife, and live with both of them.

The custom of changing their conjugal connections is very general, and is so common an occurrence, that they mention it with indifference. The *erreoes*, or those of the better sort, who possess the means of purchasing a succession of fresh connections, are generally roaming about ; and, having no particular attachment, seldom adopt the plan of a settled cohabitation. And this licentious plan of life is so agreeable to their disposition, that the most beautiful of both sexes exhaust their youthful

days in
savage
shockin
in othe
human
forth a
to its r
dipped
As
greatly
should
with re
with a
pose a
for wh
is, ho
beat th
haviour
someti
difficul
more
known
jected
cases,
timent
love is
Fr
foresk
they
negle
neigh
know
The
lads

days in practices which would disgrace the most savage tribes. These enormities are peculiarly shocking in a country whose general character has, in other respects, evident traces of the prevalence of humane feelings. When an *erreoe* woman brings forth a child, it is suffocated by applying a cloth to its mouth and nose, which has been previously dipped in water.

As the women, in such a life, must contribute greatly to its happiness, it is surprising that they should not only suffer the most humiliating restraints with regard to food, but should be often treated with a degree of brutality, which one would suppose a man must be incapable of towards an object for whom he had the least affection or esteem. It is, however, extremely common to see the men beat them most unmercifully; and, unless this behaviour proceeds from jealousy, which both sexes sometimes pretend to be infected with, it will be difficult to assign a reason for it. This may the more readily be admitted as a motive, as I have known many instances where interest has been rejected for personal beauty; though, even in these cases, they are not susceptible of those delicate sentiments that result from mutual affection. Platonic love is hardly known in Otaheite.

From a notion of cleanliness, the cutting of the foreskin is a practice adopted among them; and they bestow a reproachful epithet upon those who neglect that operation. When five or six lads in a neighbourhood are pretty well grown up, it is made known to a *taboua* by the father of one of them. The *taboua*, attended by a servant, conducts the lads to the top of the hills; and, after seating one

of them in a proper manner, places a piece of wood beneath the foreskin; at the same time amusing him, by desiring him to look aside at something which he pretends to see. The young man's attention being thus engaged, he immediately cuts through the skin with a shark's tooth, and separates the divided parts; then, after putting on a bandage, he performs the same operation on the other lads who attend him.

Five days after they have been thus disciplined, they bathe, the bandages are removed, and the matter is cleaned away. When five days more are expired, they bathe again, and are recovered; but, as a thickness of the prepuce remains, occasioned by the cutting, they again ascend the mountains with the *taboua* and servant, where a fire is prepared, and some stones heated; between two of which the prepuce is placed by the *taboua*, and is gently squeezed, in order to remove the thickness. This done, they return home adorned with odoriferous flowers; and the *taboua* is rewarded by the fathers of the lads, according to their several abilities, with a present of hogs and cloth; and if their poverty will not permit them to make a proper acknowledgment, their relations, on this occasion, are expected to be liberal.

Their religious system abounds in singularities, and few of the common people have a competent knowledge of it, that being principally confined to their priests, who, indeed, are numerous. They pay no particular respect to one god as possessing pre-eminence, but believe in a plurality of divinities, who have each a plenitude of power.

As
neighb
pective
most e
powerf
cessitie
they th
of this
two div
of Bola
have pr
because
having,
against
impute

In se
ably co
of the
and ani
of it se
are so
that th
laid as
seen th
nicious
I fear,
to the
they a
ertain

As
oblige
the m
take
they

As different parts of the island, and the other neighbouring islands have different gods, the respective inhabitants imagine they have chosen the most eminent, or one who is at least sufficiently powerful to protect them, and to supply their necessities. If he should not give them satisfaction, they think it no impiety to change. An instance of this kind has lately happened in Tiaraboo, where two divinities have been discarded, and Oraa, god of Bolabola, has been adopted in their room. They have probably been induced to make this new choice, because his people have been victorious in war and having, since their new election, been successful against the inhabitants of *Otabeite-nooe*, it is solely imputed to *Oraa*, who literally fights their battles.

In serving their gods, their assiduity is remarkably conspicuous. The *whattas*, or offering-places of the *morais* are, in general, loaded with fruits and animals, and almost every house has a portion of it set apart for a similar purpose. Many of them are so rigidly scrupulous in their religious matters, that they will not even begin a meal till they have laid aside a morsel for the *eatooa*; and we have seen their superstitious zeal carried to a most pernicious height in their human sacrifices, which are, I fear, too frequent. They probably have recourse to them to avert misfortunes. Their prayers, which they always chant like the songs in their festive entertainments, are also very frequent.

As in other cases, so in religion, the women are obliged to show their inferiority. When they pass the *morais*, they must partly uncover themselves, or take an extensive circuit to avoid them. Though they do not entertain an opinion that their god

must be continually conferring benefits without sometimes forsaking them, they are less concerned at this than at the attempts of some inauspicious being to injure them. *Etee*, they say, is an evil spirit, who delights in mischief, and to whom they make offerings, as well as to their divinity. But all the mischiefs they apprehend from invisible beings are merely temporal.

As to the soul, they believe it to be both immortal and immaterial; that, during the pangs of death, it keeps fluttering about the lips, and that it ascends and is eaten by the deity: that it continues in this state for some time, after which it takes its passage to a certain place destined to receive the souls of men, and has existence in eternal night; or rather in a kind of dawn or twilight.

They expect no permanent punishment hereafter for crimes committed upon earth; the souls of good and bad men being indiscriminately eaten by the deity. But they consider this coalition as a kind of necessary purification before they enter the regions of bliss; for their doctrine inculcates, that those who refrain from all sensual connection with women some months before they depart this life, pass into their eternal mansion, without such a previous union, as if, by such an abstinence, they were sufficiently pure to be exempted from the general lot.

They have not indeed those sublime conceptions of happiness which our religion, and, indeed, our reason, teach us to expect hereafter. Immortality is the only great privilege they think they shall acquire by death; for they suppose that spirits are not entirely divested of those passions by which

they
hicles.
former
must
this in
Th
meetin
depart
strang
They
buildin
semble
husban
tion,
spring
embra
of cor
Ma
extrav
under
exister
him,
They
out re
mean
mode
Th
deity
or n
This
the in
is on
their

they were actuated when combined with material vehicles. Thus, at a meeting of souls which were formerly enemies, many conflicts may ensue, which must certainly be ineffectual, as those who are in this invisible state must be invulnerable.

Their reasoning is similar with regard to the meeting of a man and his consort. If the husband departs this life first, the soul of his wife is no stranger to him on its arrival in the land of spirits. They renew their former intimacy in a capacious building called *Tourooa*, where departed souls assemble to recreate themselves with the gods. The husband then conducts her to his separate habitation, where they eternally reside, and have an offspring which, however, is purely spiritual, as their embraces are supposed to be far different from those of corporeal beings.

Many of their notions respecting the Deity are extravagantly absurd. They suppose him to be under the influence of those spirits who derive their existence from him, and that they frequently eat him, though he has power to recreate himself. They cannot converse about immaterial things without referring to material objects to convey their meaning, and, therefore, perhaps they use this mode of expression.

They further add, that, in the *tourooa*, the deity inquires whether they mean to destroy him or not, and their determination is unalterable. This is not only known to the spirits, but also to the inhabitants of the earth; for, when the moon is on its wane, they are supposed to be devouring their *eatooa*; and, in the proportion that it increases,

he is renewing himself. And the superior as well as the inferior gods are liable to this accident.

Other places, they also believe, are prepared for the reception of departed souls. Thus they are of opinion, that those who are drowned in the sea continue there, and enjoy a delightful country, sumptuous habitations, and every thing that can contribute to their happiness. They even maintain that all other animals have souls, and even trees, fruit, and stones; which, at their decease, or upon their being consumed or broken, ascend to the deity, from whom they pass into their destined mansion.

They imagine, that every temporal blessing is derived from their punctual performance of religious offices. They believe that the powerful influence of the divine spirit is universally diffused, and, therefore, it cannot be matter of surprise that they adopt many superstitious opinions concerning its operations. Sudden deaths, and all other accidents, they suppose to be effected under the immediate impulse of some divinity. If a man receives a wound in his toe, by stumbling against a stone, it is imputed to an *Eatooa*.

In the night, on approaching a *toopapaoo*, where dead bodies are exposed, they are startled and terrified, as many of our ignorant and superstitious people are at the sight of a church-yard, or with the apprehensions of ghosts. They have implicit confidence in dreams, supposing them to be communications from their deity, or from the spirits of their friends who have departed this life, and that those who are favoured with them can foretel future events: but this kind of knowledge is limited to

to parti
these co
the 26th
mated to
where in
first pro
Teneriff

Their
ferior to
predictio
takings
Opoony
who per
consults
old doc
degree a
public
If, on i
horizon
and seen

They
the crea
of earth
swing r
which
and tha
who on
spect
mit of
account
are ma
These
into pa
were p

to particular persons, Omai pretended to have these communications. He assured us, that, on the 26th of July 1776, his father's soul had intimated to him, in a dream, that he should land somewhere in three days; but he was unfortunate in his first prophetic attempt, for we did not get into Teneriffe till the first of August.

Their dreamers, however, are thought little inferior to their inspired priests and priestesses, whose predictions are universally credited; and all undertakings of consequence are determined by them. Opoony has a particular esteem for the priestess who persuaded him to invade Ulietea, and always consults her previous to his going to war. Our old doctrine of planetary influence they in some degree adopt; and are sometimes regulated in their public counsels by the appearances of the moon. If, on its first appearance after the change, it lies horizontally, they are encouraged to engage in war, and seem confident of success.

They have strange obscure traditions concerning the creation. Some goddess, they say, had a lump of earth suspended in a cord, and, by giving it a swing round, scattered about several pieces of land, which constituted Otaheite and the adjacent islands; and that they were all peopled by one of each sex, who originally fixed at Otaheite; but this only respects their own immediate creation, for they admit of an universal one before this. Their remotest account extends to Tatooma and Tapuppa, who are male and female rocks, and support our globe. These begat Totorro, who was killed and divided into parts and parcels of land, then Otaia and Oroo were produced, who were afterwards married, and

first begat land, and then a race of gods. Otairi being killed, Oroo marries her son, a god, named Teoraha, whom she orders to create animals, more land, and every kind of food found upon the earth. She also ordered him to create a sky, which is supported by men called Teeferai. The spots observable in the moon, they say, are groves of a certain tree which once grew in Otaheite, and being accidentally destroyed, some doves carried its seeds thither, where they flourish at this day.

They have many religious and historical legends; one of which, relative to eating human flesh is, in substance, as follows: A very long time ago there lived at Otaheite two men who were called *Tabeeai*; a name which is now given to cannibals. They inhabited the mountains, whence they issued forth, and murdered the natives, whom they afterwards devoured, and thus prevented the progress of population. Two brothers, anxious to rid the country of such enemies, successfully put in practice a stratagem for their destruction. They lived farther upward than the *Tabeeai*, and were so situate, that they could converse with them without hazarding their own safety. They invited them to partake of an entertainment, to which they readily consented. The brothers then heated some stones in a fire, and thrusting them into pieces of *mabee*, requested one of the *Tabeeai* to open his mouth, when one of those pieces was immediately dropped in, and some water poured after it, which, in quenching the stone, made a hissing noise and killed him. The other was entreated to do the same, but at first declined it, mentioning the consequences of his companion's eating; but, upon being assured that the food was

excellent and that so credul killed.

Their by the n governm such mo district bread-fr of the with the they we she died did not, from the still call

This tural as of Jack that the than unc received was not press th nibals. circums ly fed few que nited it; within es such

Whe heine,

excellent, that these effects were only temporary, and that his companion would soon recover, he was so credulous as to swallow the bait, and was also killed.

Their bodies were then cut to pieces, and buried by the natives, who rewarded the brothers with the government of the island, for delivering them from such monsters. They resided at Whapaeenoo, a district in the island, where there now remains a bread-fruit tree, which was once the property of the *Tabeeais*. They had a woman who lived with them that had two enormous teeth. After they were killed, she lived at Otaha, and, when she died, she was ranked among their deities. She did not, like the men, feed upon human flesh ; but, from the prodigious size of her teeth, the natives still call any animal that has large tusks *Tabeeai*.

This story, it must be acknowledged, is as natural as that of Hercules destroying the hydra, or of Jack the Giant-killer. But it does not appear that there is any moral couched under it, any more than under most of the old fables which have been received as truths in ignorant ages. It, however, was not injudiciously introduced, as serving to express the detestation entertained here against cannibals. And yet, it appears probable, from some circumstances, that the natives of these isles formerly fed upon human flesh. Upon asking Omai a few questions upon this subject, he resolutely denied it ; though, at the same time, he related a fact within his own knowledge, which almost establishes such a conjecture.

When the Bolabola men defeated those of Huaheine, many of his kinsmen were slain ; but a rela-

tion of his had an opportunity of being revenged, when the people of Bolabola were worsted in their turn; and, cutting a piece of flesh from the thigh of one of his enemies, he broiled and devoured it. The offering made to the chief, of the eye of the person sacrificed, appears to be a vestige of a custom that once existed to a great extent.

The principal characteristics of the sovereign, are the being invested with the *maro*, the presiding at human sacrifices, and the blowing of the conch-shell. On hearing the latter, every subject is obliged to bring food, in proportion to his circumstances, to his royal residence. Their veneration for his name, on some occasions, they carry to an extravagant height. When he accedes to the *mare*, if any words in the language are found to have a resemblance to it in sound, they are immediately changed for others; and, if any man should be presumptuous enough to continue the use of those words, not only he, but his whole family are put to death.

A similar fate attends all those who shall dare to apply the sacred name of the sovereign to any animal. Whence Omai, when in England, expressed his indignation that the names of prince or princess should be given to our dogs or horses. But though death is the punishment for taking this liberty with the name of the sovereign, abuse against his government is only punished with the forfeiture of lands and houses.

The sovereign never deigns to enter the habitation of any of his subjects; in every district where he visits he has houses belonging to himself. And if, by accident, he should ever be obliged to de-

viate from his
with his
tirely
to him
particu
ed to
on whi
first pa
but the

The
soverei
To the
the qu
people
honour
more p
family
vernme

This
clusive
Opoor
fore, a
of the
subject
quentl
they h
over w
chief s

The
family
or pow
the Ta
agreea
selves

viate from this rule, the habitation thus honoured with his presence, together with its furniture, is entirely burnt. When present, his subjects uncover to him as low as the waist; and when he is at any particular place, a pole, with a piece of cloth affixed to it, is set up in some conspicuous part near, on which the same honours are bestowed. To the first part of this ceremony his brothers are entitled; but the women only uncover to the royal females.

They are even superstitious in respect to their sovereign, and esteem his person as almost sacred. To these circumstances, perhaps, he is indebted for the quiet possession of his dominions. Even the people of Tiaraboo admit his claim to the same honours, though they esteem their own chief as more powerful, and assert that, should the reigning family become extinct, he would succeed to the government of the whole island.

This indeed is probable, as Waheiadooa, exclusive of Tiaraboo, possesses many districts of Opooreanoo. The extent of his territories is, therefore, almost equal to those of Otoo; and his part of the island is more populous and fertile. His subjects too have shown their superiority, by frequently defeating those of Otaheite-nooe, whom they hold in a contemptible light as warriors, and over whom they might be easily victorious, if their chief should be inclined to put it to the test.

The people, exclusive of the *Eree de boi*, and his family, are classed in the following order; the *Erees*, or powerful chiefs; the *Manaboone*, or vassals; and the *Teou*, or *Toutou*, servants or slaves. The men, agreeably to the regular institution, connect themselves with women of their respective ranks; but

if with one of an inferior class, and she brings forth a child, it is not only preserved, but is entitled to the rank of the father; unless he should happen to be an *Eree*, in which case the child is killed.

If a woman of condition permits a man of inferior rank to officiate as a husband, the children they produce are also killed. And if a *Teou* be detected in an intrigue with a female of the royal family, he is punished with death. The son of the *Eree de hoi*, at his birth, succeeds his father in titles and honours; but, if he has no children, the government devolves to the brother at his death. Possessions, in other families, descend to the eldest son, who is, nevertheless, obliged to support his brothers and sisters, and allow them houses on his estates.

Otaheite is divided into several districts, the boundaries of which are generally rivulets or low hills; but the subdivisions, by which particular property is ascertained, are pointed out by large stones which have continued from generation to generation. Quarrels are sometimes produced, by the removal of these stones, which are decided by battle; each party claiming the assistance of his friends. But, upon a complaint being properly made to the *Eree de hoi*, he determines the difference in an amicable manner.

These offences, however, are not common; and property seems to be as secure here, from long custom, as from the severest laws in other countries. It is an established practice among them, that crimes which are not of a general nature, are left to be punished by the party who is injured, supposing that he will decide as equitably as a person

totally
lotted
may in
one.

ing, wh
of the
But th
less th
plaited
or hog
his be
turn th
he is a
a sligh

If,
the fri
his ad
posses
party
place.
the la
flies t
and, i
large
to th
as a c
prem
of a
offen
crim
sing
tura
not
the

totally unconcerned : and, long custom having allotted certain punishments for certain crimes, he may inflict them, without being amenable to any one. If, for instance, any person be detected stealing, which is usually done in the night, the owner of the goods stolen may kill the thief immediately. But they seldom inflict so severe a punishment, unless the property taken is very valuable ; such as plaited hair and breast-plates. When only cloth or hogs are stolen, and the robber escapes, if, upon his being afterwards discovered, he engages to return the same number of hogs, and pieces of cloth, he is acquitted of the offence, or, at most, receives a slight beating.

If, in a quarrel, one person should kill another, the friends of the deceased attack the survivor and his adherents. If they are victorious, they take possession of the house and property of the other party ; but, if they are vanquished, the reverse takes place. Should a *Manaboone* kill the slave of a chief, the latter seizes the property of the former, who flies the country. A few months after he returns, and, finding his stock of hogs increased, makes a large present of these, and other valuable articles, to the *Toutou's* master, who generally considers it as a compensation, and suffers him to repossess his premises. But, it is not surprising that the killing of a man should be considered as so trifling an offence, among a people who do not think it a crime to murder their own children. On conversing with them concerning such instances of unnatural cruelty, and asking them if their chiefs were not offended, and did not punish them, they said the chief had no right to interfere in such cases,

every one being at liberty to do what he pleased with his own child.

Though the people, their customs and manners, and the productions of the islands in the neighbourhood, may, in general, be considered the same as at Otaheite, yet there are a few differences. In the little island Mataia, or Osnaburgh Island, which lies twenty leagues east of Otaheite, is spoken a different dialect from that of Otaheite. The men of Mataia also wear long hair; and, previous to their fighting, cover their arm with something beset with sharks teeth, and their bodies with a skin of fishes, not unlike shagreen. They are likewise ornamented with polished pearl shells, which make a refulgent glittering in the sun; and they have a very large one before, which covers them like a shield.

In the language of Otaheite, there are many words and phrases very different from those of the islands to the westward of it. It is remarkable for producing, in great abundance, that delicious fruit which we call apples, which are not to be found in any of the others, except Eimeo. It also produces an odoriferous wood, called *cahoi*, which is much esteemed at the other isles. Huaheine and Eimeo produce more yams than the other islands; and upon the hills at Mouroua, a particular bird is found, which is highly valued for its white feathers.

Besides the number or cluster of islands, extending from Mataia to Mouroua, we were informed by the people at Otaheite, that there was a low uninhabited island, called Mopeeha; and also several

low isla
of about

At M

to pres

that isl

other f

suming

ing th

orders

her hus

disagre

express

able a

men of

to Mat

them

who fe

mentio

format

Bolabo

with th

at first

effecte

Th

tion p

the S

certain

some

three

of p

from

Mop

low islands, to the north-eastward, at the distance of about two days sail with a fair wind.

At Mataeva it is said to be customary for men to present their daughters to strangers who visit that island. The pairs, however, must lie near each other for the space of five nights, without presuming to take any liberties. On the sixth evening the father entertains his guest with food, and orders the daughter to receive him that night as her husband. Though the bed-fellow be ever so disagreeable to the stranger, he must not dare to express the least dislike; for that is an unpardonable affront, and punishable with death. Forty men of Bolabola, whom curiosity had incited to go to Mataeva, were treated in this manner; one of them having declared his aversion to the female who fell to his lot, in the hearing of a boy, who mentioned it to the father. Fired with this information, the Mataeevans fell upon them; but the Bolabolans killed thrice their own number, though with the loss of the whole party except five. These, at first, hid themselves in the woods, and afterwards effected their escape in a canoe.

The low isles are, perhaps, the farthest navigation performed by the inhabitants of Otaheite, and the Society Islands, Monsieur de Bougainville is certainly in an error, when he says, "These people sometimes navigate to the distance of more than three hundred leagues." * For it is deemed a sort of prodigy, that a canoe, which was once driven from Otaheite in a storm, should have arrived at Mopeeha, though directly to leeward, at no great

* Bougainville's Voyage Autour du Monde, p. 228.

distance. Their knowledge of distant islands is merely traditional, communicated to them by the natives of those islands who have been accidentally driven upon their coasts.

Upon our quitting Bolabola, and taking leave of the Society Islands, on Monday the 8th of December, we steered to the northward, with the wind between north-east and east, scarce ever having it in the south-east point till after we had crossed the equator. Though a year and five months had now elapsed since our departure from England, during which period we had not been, upon the whole, unprofitably employed, Captain Cook was sensible, that, with respect to the principal object of his instructions, our voyage might be considered, at this time, as only at its commencement; and, therefore, his attention to whatever might contribute towards our safety and final success, was now to be exerted as it were anew. He had with this view examined into the state of our provisions at the islands we had visited; and having now, on leaving them, proceeded beyond the extent of his former discoveries, he ordered an accurate survey to be taken of all the stores that were in each ship, that, by being fully informed of the quantity and condition of every article, he might know how to use them to the greatest advantage.

Before we quitted the Society Isles, we had taken every opportunity of enquiring of the natives, whether there were any islands situate in a northerly or north-westerly direction from them; but it did not appear that they knew of any: nor did we meet with any thing by which the vicinity of land was indicated, till we began, about the latitude of

8° south,
tropic-bi
at this ti
the 22d
and on t
vered lan
upon our
of those
with in
narrow h
We obse
places;
pect. A
distant.
of water
a sandy

Captain
would p
resolved
our anc
immedia
landing
had bee
found
fish gre
breaker
Christn
ship, t
practic
others
the sho
as mai
pound
dore d

8° south, to see boobies, men-of-war birds, terns, tropic-birds, and a few other sorts. Our longitude, at this time, was 205° east. In the night, between the 22d and 23d, we crossed the equinoctial line; and on the 24th, soon after day-break, we discovered land bearing northeast by east. It was found, upon our making a nearer approach to it, to be one of those low islands which are so frequently met with in this ocean between the tropics; that is, a narrow bank of land that encloses the sea within. We observed some cocoa-nut-trees in two or three places; but the land in general had a very steril aspect. At twelve o'clock it was about four miles distant. On the western side we found the depth of water to be from forty to fourteen fathoms, over a sandy bottom.

Captain Cook being of opinion that this island would prove a convenient place for procuring turtle, resolved to anchor here. We accordingly dropped our anchors in thirty fathoms water, and a boat was immediately dispatched to seek for a convenient landing-place. When she returned, the officer who had been employed in this search reported, that he found no place where a boat could land, but that fish greatly abounded in the shoal water, without the breakers. Early the next morning, which was Christmas-day, two boats were sent, one from each ship, to examine more accurately whether it was practicable to land; and, at the same time, two others were ordered out to fish at a grappling near the shore. These last returned about eight, with as many fish as weighed upwards of two hundred pounds. Encouraged by this success, the commodore dispatched them again after breakfast, and he

then went himself in another boat, to view the coast, and attempt landing, which, however, he found to be impracticable. The two boats which had been sent out on the same search returned about twelve c'clock; and the master, who was in that belonging to the Resolution, reported to captain Cook, that about four or five miles to the northward, there being a break in the land, and a channel into the lagoon, there was consequently a proper place for landing; and that he had found off this entrance the same soundings as we had where we now were stationed. In consequence of this report we weighed, and after two or three trips anchored again over a bottom of fine dark sand, before a little island lying at the entrance of the lagoon.

On Friday the 26th, in the morning, the commodore ordered captain Clerke to send out a boat, with an officer in it, to the southeast part of the lagoon, in quest of turtle, and went himself with Mr King, each in a boat, to the northeast part. It was his intention to have gone to the eastern extremity, but the wind not permitting it, he and Mr King landed more to leeward, on a sandy flat, where they caught one turtle, which was the only one they saw in the lagoon. They waded through the water to an island, where they found nothing but a few birds. Captain Cook, leaving Mr King here to observe the sun's meridian altitude, proceeded to the land that bounds the sea towards the northwest, which he found even more barren than the last-mentioned isle; but walking over to the sea coast, he observed five turtles close to the shore, one of which he caught; he then returned on board, as did Mr King soon afterwards. Though so few turtles were observed

by these
supply;
who had
nel lead
and caug

The r
dispatch
the sout
to catch
wards th
captain
night, h
iorty tu
brought
noon the
with ha
tinued t
ving up
day follo
nied by
tween t
the tele
was to
King r
seven b
boat, w
and in
provisio
to sup
King,
the obs
two bo
ship by
a messa

by these two gentlemen we did not despair of a supply; for some of the officers of the Discovery, who had been ashore to the southward of the channel leading into the lagoon, had had more success, and caught several.

The next morning the cutter and pinnace were dispatched, under the command of Mr King, to the southeast part of the island, within the lagoon, to catch turtle, and the small cutter was sent towards the north, for the same purpose. Some of captain Clerke's people having been on shore all night, had been so fortunate as to turn upwards of forty turtles on the sand, which were this day brought on board; and in the course of the afternoon the party detached to the northward returned with half a dozen; and being sent back again, continued there till we departed from the island, having upon the whole pretty good success. The day following (the 28th) captain Cook, accompanied by Mr Bailey, landed on the island situate between the two channels into the lagoon, to prepare the telescopes for observing the solar eclipse that was to happen on the 30th. Towards noon Mr King returned with one boat and eight turtles, seven being left behind to be brought by the other boat, whose people were occupied in catching more; and in the evening the same boat conveyed them provisions and water. Mr Williamson now went to superintend that business in the room of Mr King, who remained on board, in order to attend the observation of the eclipse. The next day the two boats laden with turtle were sent back to the ship by Mr Williamson, who, at the same time, in a message to captain Cook, requested that the boats





might be ordered round by sea, as he had discovered a landing-place on the southeast side of the island, where the greatest numbers of turtle were caught; so that, by dispatching the boat thither, the trouble of carrying them over the land, as had hitherto been done, to the inside of the lagoon, would be saved. This advice was followed.

On Tuesday the 30th, captain Cook, and Messrs King and Bailey, repaired in the morning to the small island above mentioned, to observe the eclipse of the sun. The sky was overcast at times, but it was clear when the eclipse ended. In the afternoon, the party who had been employed in catching turtle at the southeastern part of the island, returned on board, except a sailor belonging to captain Clerke's ship, who had been missing for two days. At first there were two men who had lost their way; but happening to disagree with respect to the track that was most likely to bring them to their companions, they had separated, and one of them found means to rejoin the party, after an absence of twenty-four hours, during which he had experienced great distress. There being no fresh water in the whole island, and not one cocoa-nut-tree in that part of it, he, in order to allay his thirst, had recourse to the extraordinary expedient of drinking the blood of turtle, which he killed for that purpose. His method of refreshing himself when fatigued was equally singular, though he said he felt the good effects of it: he undressed himself, and lay down in the shallow water on the beach for some time.

How these two men had contrived to lose their way was a matter of astonishment. The land over which their journey lay, from the sea coast to the

lagoon
exceed
that o
level,
from
easily
rectio
recoll
ancho
back
stragg
the g
might
two s
no mo

Cap
of the
tion t
but ne
the ne
into t
rent t
detach
in con
the la
distre
other
longe
turtle

H
a stat
Cook
serve
were

lagoon, where the boats were stationed, did not exceed three miles across; nor was there any thing that could impede their view, for the country was level, with a few shrubs dispersed about it; and from many parts the masts of our vessels could be easily discerned. This, however, was a rule of direction which they did not think of; nor did they recollect in what part of the island the ships lay at anchor; and they were totally at a loss how to get back to them, or to the party they had so carelessly straggled from. Considering what strange people the generality of sailors are while on shore, we might, instead of being much surprised that these two should thus lose themselves, rather wonder that no more of the party were missing.

Captain Clerke was no sooner informed that one of the stragglers was still in this disagreeable situation than he detached a party in search of him; but neither the man nor the party having returned, the next morning the commodore ordered two boats into the lagoon, to prosecute the search by different tracks. In a short time after captain Clerke's detachment returned with their lost companion; in consequence of which the boats dispatched into the lagoon were called back by signal. This man's distress must have been far greater than that of the other straggler's, not only as he had been lost a longer time, but as he was too delicate to drink turtle's blood.

Having some yams and cocoa-nuts on board, in a state of vegetation, we planted them, by captain Cook's order, on the small island where he had observed the late eclipse; and some seeds of melons were sown in another place. The captain also left

on that little isle a bottle, containing the following inscription:

Georgius Tertius, Rex, 31 Decembris, 1777.

Naves { *Resolution, Jac. Cook, Pr.*
 { *Discovery, Car. Clerke, Pr.*

On Thursday the 1st of January, 1778, the commodore sent out several boats, to bring on board our different parties employed ashore, with the turtle which they had caught. It being late before this business was completed, he thought proper to defer sailing till the next morning. We procured at this island, for both ships, about three hundred turtles, which weighed one with another about ninety pounds: they were all of the green sort, and perhaps not inferior in goodness to any in the world. We also caught, with hook and line, a great quantity of fish, principally consisting of cavallies, snappers, and a few rock-fish of two species, one with whitish streaks scattered about, and the other with numerous blue spots.

The soil of this island (to which captain Cook gave the name of Christmas Island, as we kept that festival here) is in some places light and blackish, composed of sand, the dung of birds, and rotten vegetables. In other parts it is formed of broken coral stones, decayed shells, and other marine productions. These are deposited in long narrow ridges, lying parallel with the sea coast, and must have been thrown up by the waves, though they do not reach at present within a mile of some of these places. This seems to prove incontestibly that the island has been produced by different ac-

cessio
tation
many
to hav
to the
not f
we fr
ponds
comm
by the
time o
way f
the is
traces
before
dental
would
thoug
are no
getabl
or con
the f
very l
A
beside
in a v
pursla
anoth
mesem
the lo
tern,
having
are so
eggs

cessions from the sea, and is in a state of augmentation; the broken pieces of coral, and likewise many of the shells, being too large and heavy to have been brought from the beach by any birds to the places where they are now lying. We could not find anywhere a drop of fresh water, though we frequently dug for it. We met with several ponds of salt water, which, as they had no visible communication with the sea, were probably filled by the water filtering through the sand during the time of high tides. One of the men who lost their way found some salt on the southeastern part of the island. We could not discover the smallest traces of any human creature having ever been here before us; and, indeed, should any one be accidentally driven on the island, or left there, he would hardly be able to prolong his existence. For though there are birds and fish in abundance, there are no visible means of allaying thirst, nor any vegetable that would serve as a substitute for bread, or correct the bad effects of an animal diet. On the few cocoa-nut trees upon the island we found very little fruit, and that little not good.

A few low trees were observed in some parts, besides several small shrubs and plants, which grew in a very languid manner. We found a sort of purslain, a species of *Fida* or Indian mallow, and another plant that seemed, from its leaves, to be a *mesembryanthemum*, with two sorts of grass. Under the low trees sat vast numbers of a new species of tern, or egg-bird, black above and white below, having a white arch on the forehead. These birds are somewhat larger than the common noddy: their eggs are bluish, and speckled with black. There

were likewise many common boobies, a sort greatly resembling a gannet, and a chocolate-coloured species, with a white belly. Men-of-war birds, curlews, plovers, tropic birds, petrels, &c. are also to be seen here. We saw several rats, smaller than ours. There were numbers of land-crabs and small lizards.

Christmas Island is supposed by captain Cook to be between fifteen and twenty leagues in circuit. Its form is semi-circular, or like the moon in her last quarter, the two horns being the north and south points. The west side, or the small island situate at the entrance into the lagoon, lies in the longitude of $202^{\circ} 30'$ east, and in the latitude of $1^{\circ} 59'$ north.

Like most of the other isles in this ocean, Christmas Island is surrounded by a reef of coral rock, extending but a little way from the shore; and further out than this reef, on the western side, is a bank of sand, which extends a mile into the sea. There is good anchorage on this bank, in any depth between eighteen and thirty fathoms. During our continuance here, the wind generally blew a fresh gale at east by south, or east; and we had constantly a great swell from the northward, which broke on the reef in a very violent surf.

Weighing anchor at day-break, on Friday the 2d of January, 1778, we resumed our northerly course, with a gentle breeze at east, and east-south-east, which continued till we arrived in the latitude of $7^{\circ} 45'$ north, and the longitude of 205° east, where we had a day of perfect calm. A northeast by east wind then succeeded, which blew faintly at first, but freshened as we proceeded northward.

We sail
boobies,
11° nor
these an
land, we
of Sund
bearing
land was
detached
supposed
longitud
our latit
rise, the
of sever
we shap
observed

We h
at noon
east end
leagues
many o
their c
ships.
they sp
They c
to com
medals
who we
fastened
equival
pieces
gave in
tatoe;
of bart

We daily observed tropic birds, men-of-war birds, boobies, &c. and between the latitude of 10° and 11° north, we saw several turtles. Though all these are considered as signs of the proximity of land, we discovered none till early in the morning of Sunday the 18th, when an island appeared, bearing northeast by east. Not long after more land was seen, which bore north, and was totally detached from the former. At noon the first was supposed to be eight or nine leagues distant. Our longitude at this time was $200^{\circ} 41'$ east, and our latitude $21^{\circ} 12'$ north. The next day, at sunrise, the island first seen bore east, at the distance of several leagues. Not being able to reach this we shaped our course for the other; and soon after observed a third island, bearing west-northwest.

We had now a fine breeze at east by north; and at noon the second island, named Atooi, for the east end of which we were steering, was about two leagues distant. As we made a nearer approach many of the inhabitants put off from the shore in their canoes, and very readily came alongside the ships. We were agreeably surprised to find that they spoke a dialect of the Otaheitean language. They could not be prevailed upon by any entreaties to come on board. Captain Cook tied some medals to a rope, which he gave to one of those who were in one of the canoes, and they, in return, fastened some mackarel to the rope, by way of equivalent. This was repeated; and some nails, or pieces of iron, were given them, for which they gave in exchange some more fish, and a sweet potatoe; a sure indication of their having some notion of bartering, or at least of returning one present

for another. One of them even offered for sale the piece of stuff which he wore about his waist. These people did not exceed the ordinary size, and were stoutly made. Their complexion was brown; and though there appeared to be little difference in the casts of their colour, there was a considerable variation in their features. Most of them had their hair cropped rather short, a few had it tied in a bunch at the top of the head, and others suffered it to flow loose. It seemed to be naturally black; but the generality of them had it stained with some stuff which communicated to it a brownish colour. Most of them had pretty long beards. They had no ornaments about their persons, nor did we observe that they had their ears perforated. Some of them were *tattooed* on the hands, or near the groin; and the pieces of cloth which were worn by them round their middle were curiously coloured with white, black, and red. They seemed to be mild and good-natured; and were furnished with no arms of any kind, except some small stones, which they had manifestly brought for their own defence, and these they threw into the sea when they found that there was no occasion for them.

As we perceived no signs of an anchoring-place at this eastern extremity of the island, we bore away to leeward, and ranged along the southeast side, at the distance of about a mile and a half from the shore. The canoes left us when we made sail; but others came off as we proceeded along the coast, and brought with them pigs and some excellent potatoes, which they exchanged for whatever we offered to them; and several small pigs were purchased by us for a sixpenny nail. We passed divers villa-

ges, some others fun all of the bled on t ships. C a gentle a mountain country, where th seemed to horizonta the villag ral planta continued a line of low poi island, w fathoms, this poin teen, tw sand. V and the were me of whom None in any o as these eyes we other; fully in to ever us, tha visited of our

ges, some of which were situate near the sea, and others further up the country. The inhabitants of all of them came in crowds to the shore, and assembled on the elevated places, to take a view of the ships. On this side of the island the land rises in a gentle acclivity from the sea to the bottom of the mountains, which occupy the central part of the country, except at one place near the eastern end, where they rise immediately from the sea: they seemed to be composed of stone, or rocks lying in horizontal strata. We observed a few trees about the villages, near which we could also discern several plantations of sugar-canes and plantains. We continued to sound, but did not strike ground with a line of fifty fathoms, till we came abreast of a low point near the northwest extremity of the island, where we found from twelve to fourteen fathoms, over a rocky bottom. Having passed this point, we met with twenty fathoms, then sixteen, twelve, and at last five, over a bottom of sand. We spent the night in standing off and on, and the next morning stood in for the land. We were met by several canoes filled with natives, some of whom ventured to come on board.

None of the inhabitants we ever met with before, in any other island or country, were so astonished as these people were upon entering a ship. Their eyes were incessantly roving from one object to another; and the wildness of their looks and gestures fully indicated their perfect ignorance with respect to every thing they saw, and strongly marked to us, that they had never till the present time been visited by Europeans, nor been acquainted with any of our commodities, except iron. This metal,

however, they had in all probability only heard of, or had perhaps known it in some inconsiderable quantity, brought to them at a remote period. They asked for it by the appellation of *hamaité*, referring probably to some instrument, in making which iron could be serviceably employed; for they applied that name to the blade of a knife, though they had no idea of that particular instrument, which they could not even handle properly. They also frequently called iron by the name of *toe*, which signifies a hatchet or adze. On our showing them some beads, they first asked what they were, and then whether they were to be eaten; but on their being informed that they were to be hung in their ears, they rejected them as useless. They were equally indifferent with regard to a looking-glass that we offered them, and returned it for a similar reason. China cups, plates of earthen-ware, and other things of that kind, were so new to them, that they asked whether they were made of wood. They were, in many respects, naturally polite, or at least cautious of giving offence. Some of them, just before their venturing on board, repeated a long prayer, and others afterwards sung, and made various motions with their hands. On their first entering the ship, they attempted to steal every thing that they could lay hands on, or rather to take it openly, as if they supposed that we either should not resent such behaviour, or not hinder it. But we soon convinced them of their error; and when they observed that we kept a watchful eye over them, they became less active in appropriating to themselves what did not belong to them.

About nine o'clock captain Cook dispatched

lieutenant
look out for
water; wit
cary to land
allow more
the boats.
off from th
a cleaver,
and hasten
pursued hi
The rea
crews of th
he might p
dangerous
some of ou
we unfortu
islands in
commande
cluded from
sex had co
complexio
those of t
were extre
cacy were
tions. The
ing a piec
near the r
of the ma
as much i
on board,
dore was
nection w
irreparabl
through t

lieutenant Williamson, with three armed boats, to look out for a proper landing-place, and for fresh water; with orders that, if he should find it necessary to land in search of the latter, he should not allow more than one man to accompany him out of the boats. The very moment they were putting off from the ship, one of the islanders having stolen a cleaver, leaped overboard, got into his canoe, and hastened towards the shore, while the boats pursued him in vain.

The reason of the commodore's order that the crews of the boats should not go on shore was, that he might prevent, if possible, the importation of a dangerous disease into this island, which he knew some of our people now laboured under, and which we unfortunately had already communicated to other islands in this ocean. From the same motive, he commanded that all female visitants should be excluded from both the ships. Many persons of this sex had come off in their canoes. Their features, complexion, and stature, were not very different from those of the men; and though their countenances were extremely open and agreeable, few traces of delicacy were visible either in their faces or other proportions. The only difference in their dress, was their having a piece of cloth about their bodies, reaching from near the middle almost down to the knees, instead of the *maro* worn by the male sex. They were as much inclined to favour us with their company on board, as some of the men were; but the commodore was extremely desirous of preventing all connection which might, in all probability, convey an irreparable injury to themselves, and afterwards, through their means, to the whole nation. Ano-

ther prudent precaution was taken, by strictly enjoining, that no person capable of communicating the infection should be sent upon duty out of the ships.

Captain Cook had paid equal attention to the same object, when he first visited the Friendly Isles; but he afterwards found, to his great regret, that his endeavours had not succeeded. And there is reason to apprehend that this will constantly be the case in such voyages as ours, whenever it is necessary that many people should be employed on shore. The opportunities and incitements to an amorous intercourse are then too numerous to be effectually guarded against; and, however confident a commander may be of the health of his men, he is often undeceived too late. Among a number of men, there are in general to be found some, who, out of bashfulness, endeavour to conceal their having any venereal symptoms: and there are others so profligate and abandoned, as not to care to whom they communicate this disease. We had an instance of the last remark at Tongataboo, in the gunner of the *Discovery*, who had been stationed on shore. After knowing that he had contracted this disorder, he continued to have connections with different women, who were supposed to have been, till that time, free from any infection. His companions remonstrated to him on this scandalous behaviour without effect, till captain Clerke being informed of such a dangerous irregularity of conduct, ordered him to repair on board.

Waiting for the return of our boats, which had been sent out to reconnoitre the coast, we stood off and on with the ships. Towards mid-day, Mr

William
observe
a large
fresh w
ground
made an
prevent
great ne
away th
which t
upon hi
necessit
This wa
known
the islan
if no aff
liamson
he was t
who the
made sig
declined
the least
of Mr
have be
them wh
turn, any
Capta
to lie in
had gain
and cast
a sandy
which w
south 5
and the

Williamson came back, and reported, that he had observed behind a beach, near one of the villages, a large pond, which was said by the natives to contain fresh water; and that there was tolerable anchoring-ground before it. He also mentioned, that he had made an attempt to land in another place, but was prevented by the islanders, who, coming down in great numbers to the boats, endeavoured to take away the oars, musquets, and every other article which they could lay hold of; and crowded so thick upon him and his people, that he was under the necessity of firing, by which one man was killed. This unfortunate circumstance, however, was not known to captain Cook till after we had quitted the island, so that all his measures were directed as if no affair of that kind had happened. Mr Williamson informed him, that, as soon as the man fell, he was taken up and carried off by his countrymen, who then retired from the boats; but still they made signals for our people to land, which they declined. It did not appear, that the natives had the least intention of killing, or even hurting any of Mr Williamson's party; but they seemed to have been excited by curiosity alone to get from them what they had, being prepared to give, in return, any thing that appertained to themselves.

Captain Cook then dispatched one of the boats to lie in the best anchoring-ground; and when she had gained this station, he bore down with the ships, and cast anchor in twenty-five fathoms water, over a sandy bottom. The eastern point of the road, which was the low point already mentioned, bore south 51° east; the west point, north 65° west; and the village near which the fresh water was said

to be, was one mile distant. The ships being thus stationed, between three and four in the afternoon the captain went ashore with three armed boats and twelve of the marines, with a view of examining the water, and trying the disposition of the inhabitants, who had assembled in considerable numbers on a sandy beach before the village; behind it was a valley, in which was the piece of water. The moment he leaped on shore, all the islanders fell prostrate upon their faces, and continued in that posture of humiliation till, by signs, he prevailed on them to rise. They then presented to him many small pigs, with plantain-trees, making use of nearly the same ceremonies which we had seen practised on similar occasions at the Society and other isles; and a long oration or prayer being pronounced by an individual, in which others of the assembly occasionally joined. Captain Cook signified his acceptance of their proffered friendship, by bestowing on them, in return, such presents as he had brought ashore. This introductory business being ended, he stationed a guard upon the beach, and was then conducted by some of the natives to the water, which he found extremely good, and so considerable, that it might be denominated a lake. After this, he returned on board, and issued orders that preparations should be made for filling our water-casks in the morning, at which time he went ashore with some of his people, having a party of marines for a guard.

They had no sooner landed, than a trade was entered into for potatoes and hogs, which the islanders gave in exchange for nails and pieces of iron. Far from giving any obstruction to our men

who w
them i
perform
them.
station
him, m
valley,
and W
natives,
in keep
choice
proclair
son wh
and rem
sed.
their m
chiefs.

We
along t
white o
lisks;
be at le
ous from
at a sm
view of
men's w
desire o
be in su
it, the
Howev
bout ha
ley, the
reached
burying

who were occupied in watering, they even assisted them in rolling the casks to and from the pool, and performed with alacrity whatever was required of them. Captain Cook leaving the command at this station to Mr Williamson, who had landed with him, made an excursion into the country, up the valley, being accompanied by Messrs Anderson and Webber, and followed by a numerous train of natives, one of whom, who had been very active in keeping the others in order, the captain made choice of as a guide. This man, from time to time, proclaiming the approach of our gentlemen, every person who met them, fell prostrate on the ground, and remained in that humble position till they had passed. This, as we were afterwards informed, is their method of showing respect to their own great chiefs.

We had observed at every village, as we ranged along the coast in the ships, one or more elevated white objects, resembling pyramids, or rather obelisks; one of which, supposed by captain Cook to be at least fifty feet in height, was very conspicuous from our anchoring station, and seemed to be at a small distance up this valley. To have a nearer view of it was the principal motive of our gentlemen's walk. Their guide was acquainted with their desire of being conducted to it: but it happened to be in such a situation that they could not get at it, the pool of water separating it from them. However, as there was another of the same kind about half a mile distant, upon their side of the valley, they set out to visit that. As soon as they reached it, they perceived that it was situate in a burying-ground or *morai*, which bore a striking re-

semblance, in several respects, to those they had seen at Otaheite and other islands in this ocean. It was an oblong space of considerable extent, environed by a stone wall four or five feet high. The inclosed space was loosely paved; and, at one end of it, was placed the obelisk or pyramid, called by the natives *benananoo*, which was an exact model of the larger one that we had discerned from our ships. It was about twenty feet in height, and four feet square at the base. Its four sides were formed of small poles interwoven with twigs and branches, thus composing an indifferent wicker-work, hollow within from the top to the bottom. It appeared to be in a ruinous state, and had been originally covered with a thin greyish cloth. On each side of it were long pieces of wicker-work, termed *hereanee*, in a condition equally ruinous, with two poles inclining towards each other at one corner, where some plantains were placed on a board, fixed at the height of about half a dozen feet. This was called by the islanders *herairemy*, and they said that the fruit was an offering to their deity. Before the *benananoo* were several pieces of wood, carved into some resemblance of human figures. There was also a stone near two feet in height, covered with cloth. Adjoining to this on the outside of the *morai*, was a small shed, which they denominated *harsepahoo*; and before it there was a grave where the remains of a woman had been deposited.

There was a house or shed called *bemanaa*, on the further side of the area of the *morai*: it was about forty feet in length, ten or eleven feet in height, and ten in breadth in the middle, but narrower at each end; though considerably longer, it

was lo
site th
ges ne
wood,
no Ve
were n
tion or
a cylin
heite,
ved he
cient
cloth f
a consi
of each
on it.
which
the mic
describ
edging
this wa
beneene.
Our
instanc
were n
lately
their m
rites he
oblatio
soon c
into th
and a
these v
that in
been s

was lower than their common habitations. Opposite the entrance into this house stood two images near three feet high, cut out of one piece of wood, with pedestals: they were said to be *Batooa no Vebaina*, or representations of goddesses, and were not very indifferent either in point of execution or design. On the head of one of them was a cylindrical cap, not unlike the head-dress at Otaheite, called *tomou*; and on that of the other, a carved helmet, somewhat resembling those of the ancient warriors; and both of them had pieces of cloth fastened about the loins, and hanging down a considerable way. There was also, at the side of each, a piece of carved wood, with cloth hung on it. Before the pedestals lay a quantity of fern, which had been placed there at different times. In the middle of the house, and before the images just described, was an oblong space, inclosed by an edging of stone, and covered with shreds of cloth: this was the grave of seven chiefs, and was called *beneene*.

Our gentlemen had already met with so many instances of resemblance between the *morai* they were now visiting, and those of the islands they had lately quitted, that they entertained little doubt in their minds, that the similarity existed also in the rites here solemnized, and particularly in the horrid oblation of human victims. Their suspicions were soon confirmed; for, on one side of the entrance into the *hemanaa*, they observed a small square place, and another still smaller; and, on asking what these were, they were informed by their conductor, that in one of them was interred a man who had been sacrificed; and in the other a hog, which had

also been offered up to the deity. At no great distance from these were three other square inclosed places, with two pieces of carved wood at each of them, and a heap of fern upon them. These were the graves of three chiefs, and before them was an inclosed space, of an oblong figure, called *Tangata-taboo* by our gentlemen's guide, who declared to them, that three human sacrifices, one at the funeral of each chief, had been there buried.

Every appearance induced the commodore to believe that this inhuman practice was very general here. The island seemed to abound with such places of sacrifice as this, at which he was now present, and which was probably one of the most inconsiderable of them; being much less conspicuous than some others which we had observed as we sailed along the coast, and particularly than that on the opposite side of the piece of water running through this valley; the white pyramid of which, in all probability, derived its colour solely from the consecrated cloth put over it. In many spots within this burying-ground were planted trees of the *morinda citrifolia*, and *cordia sebestina*, besides several plants of the *etea*, with the leaves of which the *hianaa* was thatched.

The journey of our gentlemen to and from this *morai* lay through the plantations. Most of the ground was perfectly flat, with ditches intersecting different parts, and roads that seemed to have been raised to some height by art. The intervening spaces, in general, were planted with *taro*, which grew with great vigour. There were several spots where the cloth-mulberry was planted in regular

rows; were in but the pretty trees the the *cor* situate sixty ho forty me

After Webber worthy had tak country found a and a b going o corum. dinner, mand o he lande tending but, be was too intentio afterwar people the cou (princip seventy tatoes, course, tions, m side ou

rows ; this also grew vigorously. The cocoa-trees were in a less thriving condition, and were all low ; but the plantain-trees, though not large, made a pretty good appearance. Upon the whole, the trees that are most numerous round this village, are the *cordia sebastina*. The greatest part of it is situate near the beach, and consists of upwards of sixty houses there ; but there may perhaps be near forty more scattered about, towards the *morai*.

After the commodore, and Messrs Anderson and Webber, had carefully examined whatever was worthy of notice about the *morai*, and the latter had taken drawings of it, and of the surrounding country, they returned by a different route. They found a multitude of people collected at the beach, and a brisk trade for fowls, pigs, and vegetables, going on there, with the greatest order and decorum. At noon captain Cook went on board to dinner, and then sent Mr King to take the command of the party on shore. During the afternoon he landed again, accompanied by captain Clerke, intending to make another excursion up the country : but, before he could execute this design, the day was too far advanced, he therefore relinquished his intention for the present, and no other opportunity afterwards occurred. Towards sun-set, he and his people returned on board, after having procured, in the course of this day, nine tons of water, and (principally by exchanging nails and pieces of iron) seventy or eighty pigs, some fowls, plantains, potatoes, and *taro* roots. In this commercial intercourse, the islanders deserved our best commendations, making no attempts to cheat us, either alongside our ships, or on shore. Some of them, in

deed, as we have already related, betrayed at first a pilfering disposition; or, perhaps, they imagined that they had a right to all that they could lay their hands upon: but they quickly desisted from a conduct, which, we convinced them, could not be persevered in with impunity.

Among the various articles which they brought to barter this day, we were particularly struck with a sort of cloak and cap, which, even in more polished countries, might be esteemed elegant. These cloaks are nearly of the shape and size of the short ones worn by the men in Spain, and by the women in England, tied loosely before, and reaching to the middle of the back. The ground of them is a network, with the most beautiful red and yellow feathers so closely fixed upon it, that the surface, both in point of smoothness and glossiness, resembles the richest velvet. The method of varying the mixture is very different; some of them having triangular spaces of yellow and red alternately; others, a sort of crescent; while some were entirely red, except that they had a broad yellow border. The brilliant colours of the feathers in those cloaks that were new, had a very fine effect. The natives, at first, refused to part with one of these cloaks for any thing that we offered in exchange, demanding no less a price than one of our musquets. They afterwards, however, suffered us to purchase some of them for very large nails. Those of the best sort were scarce; and it is probable, that they are used only on particular occasions.

The caps are made in the form of a helmet, with the middle part, or crest, frequently of a hand's

breadth.
have no
twigs a
which fo
but som
jor part
black st
bability,
the islan

We c
tained s
but we
sort; fo
numbere
frequent
wards, c
At first
of the s
we after
includin
suggest
of para
explaine
the inha
off the
they ca
losing a

The
Mr An
as a sp
with th
ed bill,
feet, w
head w

breadth. They sit very close upon the head, and have notches to admit the ears. They consist of twigs and osiers, covered with a net-work, into which feathers are wrought, as upon the cloaks, but somewhat closer, and less diversified; the major part being red, with some yellow, green, or black stripes, on the sides. These caps, in all probability, complete the dress, with the cloak; for the islanders appeared sometimes in both together.

We could not conjecture from whence they obtained such a quantity of these beautiful feathers; but we soon procured intelligence respecting one sort; for they afterwards brought for sale great numbers of skins of a small red species of birds, frequently tied up in bunches of twenty or upwards, or having a wood skewer run through them. At first, those that were purchased, consisted only of the skin from behind the wings forwards; but we afterwards obtained many with the hind part, including the feet and tail. The former instantly suggested to us the origin of the fable of the birds of paradise being destitute of legs; and sufficiently explained that particular. The reason assigned by the inhabitants of Atooi for the custom of cutting off the feet of these birds, is, that by this practice they can preserve them the more easily, without losing any part which they consider as valuable.

The red-bird of this island, was, according to Mr Anderson, a species of *merops*, about as large as a sparrow; its colour was a beautiful scarlet, with the tail and wings black; and it had an arched bill, twice as long as the head, which, with the feet, was of a reddish hue. The contents of the head were taken out, as in the birds of paradise;

but we did not find that they practised any other mode of preserving them than simple drying; for the skins, though they were moist, had neither a smell nor taste that could give any reason for suspecting the use of anti-putrescent substances.

On Thursday the 22d, we had almost continual rain for the whole morning. The wind was at southeast, south-southeast, and south; and the surf broke so high upon the shore, that our boats were prevented from landing. The Resolution was not in a very secure situation, there being breakers within little more than two cables length from her stern. The natives, notwithstanding the surf, ventured out in their canoes, bringing off to our ships hogs and vegetables, which they exchanged, as before, for our commodities. One of their number, who offered some fish-hooks for sale, was observed to have a very small parcel fastened to the string of one of them, which he carefully separated, and reserved for himself, when he disposed of the hook. When asked what it was, he pointed to his belly, and intimated something of its being dead; saying, at the same time, that it was bad. He was requested to open the parcel, which he did with great reluctance; and we found that it contained a small thin piece of flesh, which had to all appearance been dried, but was at present wet with salt water. Imagining that it might be human flesh, we put the question to the producer of it, who answered that the flesh was part of a man. Another of the islanders, who stood near him, was then asked, whether it was a custom among them to eat their enemies who had been slain in battle, and he immediately replied in the affirmative,

In the weather. northeast again to continued nined with a north-e ordered t a view of the last a east, ren could, fo that befo considera the road, and very design : Williams water and an order if he sho recover t The c or perha was the tion; bu as much which, a ward. that the without might b which, r the shor

In the afternoon we had some intervals of fair weather. The wind then changed to the east and northeast, but towards the evening it veered back again to south-southeast. The rain also returning, continued the whole night, but was not accompanied with much wind. At seven the next morning, a north-easterly breeze springing up, captain Cook ordered the anchors of his ship to be taken up, with a view of removing her farther out. As soon as the last anchor was up, the wind veering to the east, rendered it necessary to make all the sail he could, for the purpose of clearing the shore; so that before he had good sea-room, he was driven considerably to leeward. He endeavoured to regain the road, but having a strong current against him, and very little wind, he could not accomplish that design: he therefore dispatched Messrs King and Williamson ashore, with three boats, to procure water and refreshments, sending at the same time an order to captain Clerke to put to sea after him, if he should find that the Resolution was unable to recover the road.

The commodore having hopes of finding a road, or perhaps a harbour, at the west end of the island, was the less anxious about regaining his former station; but as he had sent the boats thither, he kept as much as possible to windward; notwithstanding which, at noon, our ship was three leagues to leeward. As we approached the west end we found that the coast rounded gradually to the northeast, without forming a cove or creek, wherein a vessel might be sheltered from the violence of the swell, which, rolling in from the northward, broke against the shore in an amazing surf: all hopes, therefore,

of meeting with a harbour here soon vanished. Many of the natives in their canoes followed us as we stood out to sea, bartering various articles. As we were extremely unwilling, notwithstanding the suspicious circumstance of the preceding day, to believe that these people were cannibals, we now made some further inquiries on this subject. A small instrument of wood beset with shark's teeth had been purchased, which, as it resembled the saw or knife made use of by the savages of New Zealand to dissect the bodies of their enemies, was suspected by us to be employed here for the same purpose. One of the islanders being questioned on this point, informed us, that the instrument above mentioned served the purpose of cutting out the fleshy part of the belly, when any person was slain. This explained and confirmed the circumstance before related, of the man's pointing to his belly. The native, however, from whom we now received this intelligence, being asked whether his countrymen ate the part thus cut out; strongly denied it; but when the question was repeated, he showed some degree of apprehension, and swam off to his canoe. An elderly man, who sat foremost in the canoe, was then asked whether they ate the flesh, and he answered in the affirmative. The question being then put to him a second time he again affirmed the fact; adding, that it was savoury food.

The boats returned about seven o'clock in the evening, with a few hogs, some plantains and roots, and two tons of water. Mr King reported to the commodore that the islanders were very numerous at the watering place, and had brought great numbers of hogs to barter; but our people had not

commodore
them all
run so ye
our men
boats.

On Sa
that our
northwe
of Atooi
A north
tain Co
covery to
ing island
of anchor
till past
stance of
the Dis
consequ
be there
Quecheo
Atooi, i
in order
o'clock
and vari
at night
in the m
stood in
were jo
unable t
the 29th
ward, w
with pl
aside all
summed

commodities with them adequate to the purchase of them all. He also mentioned, that the surf had run so very high, that it was with extreme difficulty our men landed, and afterwards got back into the boats.

On Saturday the 24th, at day-break, we found that our ship had been carried by the currents to the northwest and north, so that the western extremity of Atooi bore east, at the distance of one league. A northerly breeze sprung up soon after, and captain Cook expecting that this would bring the Discovery to sea, steered for Oneeheow, a neighbouring island, which then bore southwest, with a view of anchoring there. He continued to steer for it till past eleven, at which time he was at the distance of about six miles from it; but not seeing the Discovery, he was apprehensive lest some ill consequence might arise from our separating so far; he therefore relinquished the design of visiting Oneeheow for the present, and stood back to Atooi, intending to cast anchor again in the road, in order to complete our supply of water. At two o'clock the northerly wind was succeeded by calms and variable light airs, which continued till eleven at night. We stretched to the southeast till early in the morning of the 25th, when we tacked and stood in for Atooi road, and not long after we were joined by the Discovery. We were utterly unable to regain the road; and by the morning of the 29th the currents had carried us to the westward, within nine or ten miles of Oneeheow. Weary with plying so unsuccessfully, captain Cook laid aside all thoughts of returning to Atooi, and resumed his intention of paying a visit to Oneeheow.

With this view he dispatched the master in a boat, to sound along the coast, and search for a landing-place, and afterwards for fresh water. In the mean time the ships followed under an easy sail. The master, at his return, reported that there was tolerable anchorage all along the coast; and that he had landed in one place, but could not find any fresh water.

Captain Cook being informed by some of the natives, who had come off to the ships, that fresh water might be obtained at a village which we saw at a little distance, ran down, and cast anchor before it, about six furlongs from the shore, the depth of water being twenty-six fathoms. The Discovery anchored at a greater distance from the shore, in twenty-three fathoms. The south-eastern point of Oueheow bore south, 65° east, about one league distant; and another island which we had discovered the preceding night, named Tahoorā, bore south, 61° west, at the distance of seven leagues. Before we anchored, several canoes came off to us, bringing potatoes, yams, and small pigs, besides mats. The people who were in them resembled in their persons the inhabitants of Atooi; and like them were acquainted with the use of iron, which they asked for by the names of *toe* and *bamaite*, readily parting with all their commodities for pieces of this metal. Some more canoes soon reached our ships, after they had come to anchor; but the islanders who were in these had apparently no other object than to make us a formal visit. Many of them came on board, and crouched down upon the deck; nor did they quit that humble posture till they were requested to rise. Several wo-

men who remained much less at intervals, not very in concert, but their hands not continuing, some locks of the. The canoes were cannot see did not from a doubt. at the gu asked, which should come signs so doubt with an opportunity; instantly they would they would their devotion being at Mr George armed boat landing-place water which in the evening he had landed had been

men whom they had brought along with them remained alongside in the canoes, behaving with much less modesty than the females of Atooi; and at intervals they all joined in a song, which, though not very melodious, was performed in the exactest concert, by beating time upon their breasts with their hands. The men who had come on board did not continue long with us; and, before their departure, some of them desired permission to lay down locks of their hair on the deck.

The curious inquiry, whether these islanders were cannibals, was this day renewed; and the subject did not arise from any questions put by us, but from a circumstance that seemed to remove all doubt. One of the natives who wished to get in at the gun-room port was refused; and he then asked, whether we should kill and eat him, if he should come in? accompanying this question with signs so expressive, that we did not entertain a doubt with respect to his meaning. We had now an opportunity of retorting the question as to this practice; and a man behind the other, in the canoe, instantly replied, that if we were killed on shore they would not scruple to eat us; not that he meant they would destroy us for that purpose, but that their devouring us would be the consequence of our being at enmity with them.

Mr Gore was sent in the afternoon, with three armed boats, in search of the most commodious landing-place; being also directed to look for fresh water when he should get on shore. He returned in the evening, and reported to captain Cook, that he had landed at the village above mentioned, and had been conducted to a well about half a mile up

the country; but that the water which it contained was in too small a quantity for our purpose, and the road that led to it was extremely bad. The next day Mr Gore was sent ashore again, with a guard, and a party to trade with the inhabitants for refreshments. The commodore's intention was to have followed soon afterwards; and he went from the ship with that design; but the surf had so greatly increased by this time, that he was apprehensive if he got ashore he should not be able to make his way back again. This circumstance really happened to our people who had landed with Mr Gore; for the communication between them the ships, by our own boats, was quickly stopped. They made a signal in the evening for the boats, which were accordingly sent; and in a short time afterwards returned, with some good salt, and a few yams. A considerable quantity of both these articles had been obtained in the course of the day; but the surf was so exceedingly high, that the greatest part of both had been lost in bringing them off to the boats. The officer and twenty men, not venturing to run the risk of coming off, remained all night on shore, by which unfortunate circumstance the very thing happened which captain Cook, as we have already related, so eagerly wished to prevent, and imagined he had so effectually guarded against.

The violence of the surf did not prevent the natives from coming off in canoes to our ships. They brought with them some refreshments, for which we gave them, in exchange, some nails and pieces of iron hoops; and we distributed among the women in the canoes many pieces of ribbon, and some

It contained
purpose, and the
d. The next
with a guard,
bitants for re-
ention was to
he went from
e surf had so
he was appre-
ot be able to
circumstance
d landed with
between them
ekly stopped.
for the boats,
n a short time
d salt, and a
of both these
se of the day,
gh, that the
bringing them
enty men, not
off, remained
unate circum-
which captain
eagerly wish-
so effectually

revent the na-
ships. They
ats, for which
ils and pieces
among the wo-
on, and some

buttons as bracelets. Some of the men had representations of human figures punctured upon their breasts, and one of them had a lizard represented. These visitants acquainted us, that there was no chief of this island, but that it was subject to one of the chiefs of Atooi, whose name was Teneo-oneoo. Among other articles which they now brought off to us, was a small drum, that had a great resemblance to those of Otaheite.

Between ten and eleven o'clock at night, the wind became southerly, and the sky seemed to indicate an approaching storm. In consequence of these threatening appearances, captain Cook, thinking that we were rather too near the shore, caused the anchors to be taken up; and the ships being carried into forty-two fathom water, came to again in that more secure station. This, however, proved an unnecessary precaution; for the wind, not long after, veering to the north northeast, blew a fresh gale, with squalls and violent showers of rain. This weather continued for the whole succeeding day, during which the sea ran so high, that all communication with our party on shore was totally intercepted, and the islanders themselves would not venture out to the ships in their canoes. Towards the evening the commodore sent the master in a boat to the southeast point of the island, to try whether he could land in that quarter. He returned with a favourable report; but it was now too late to send for our party till the following morning; so that they were obliged to stay another night on shore. On the appearance of day-light, a boat was dispatched to the southeast point, with orders to lieutenant Gore, that, if he could not

embark his people from the spot where they at present were, he should march them up to the point. The boat being prevented from getting to the beach, one of the crew swam off to shore, and communicated the instructions. After the boat had returned, captain Cook went himself with the launch and pinnace up to the point, in order to bring off our party from the land. He took with him three goats, one of them a male and the other female; a young boar and sow of the English breed; and also the seeds of onions, pumpkins, and melons. He landed with great ease under the west side of the point, where he found his party in company with some of the natives. To one of these, who assumed some degree of authority over the rest, he gave the goats, pigs, and seeds. He intended to have left these useful presents at Atooi, if we had not been so unexpectedly driven from that island.

While our people were employed in filling some water-casks from a little stream which the late rains had occasioned, captain Cook made a short excursion into the country, accompanied by the islander above mentioned, and followed by two others, who carried the two pigs. When they had arrived upon a rising ground, the captain stopped to look around him, and immediately observed a woman on the opposite side of the valley in which he had landed, calling out to her countrymen who attended him. Upon this, the man who acted as chief began to mutter something, as if he was praying; and the two bearers of the pigs continued walking round the captain all the time, making about a dozen circuits before the other had made an end of his oraison. This strange ceremony being

performed
people co
called to
on their
over whic
and very
some of
licious fr

Our p
shore, fo
had trav
had a sm
had none
stream;
they met
seemed t
were thi
that ther
in the w
these pe
was obse
and the
compani
doe doe
during t
baking t
the who
proof of
for one
who wa
mysterio
which v
pig into
bundle

performed, they proceeded on their walk, and met people coming from all quarters, who, upon being called to by the captain's attendants, fell prostrate on their faces till he was out of sight. The ground over which he passed, though it was uncultivated and very stony, was covered with plants and shrubs, some of which perfumed the air with the most delicious fragrance.

Our party who had been detained so long on shore, found, in those parts of the island which they had traversed, several salt ponds, some of which had a small quantity of water remaining, but others had none. They saw no appearance of a running stream; and though, in some small wells which they met with, the fresh water was pretty good, it seemed to be scarce. The houses of the natives were thinly scattered about; and it was supposed that there were not more than five hundred persons in the whole island. The method of living among these people was decent and cleanly. No instance was observed of the men and women eating together; and the latter seemed in general to be associated in companies by themselves. The oily nuts of the *dooe dooe* are burned by these islanders for lights during the night; and they dress their hogs by baking them in ovens, splitting the carcasses through the whole length. Our people met with a sufficient proof of the existence of the *taboo* among them; for one woman was employed in feeding another who was under that interdiction. Several other mysterious ceremonies were also observed; one of which was performed by a woman, who threw a pig into the surf and drowned it, and then tied a bundle of wood, which she disposed of in the

like manner. The same female, at another time, beat a man's shoulders, with a stick, after he had seated himself for that purpose. An extraordinary veneration seemed to be paid here to owls, which they kept very tame. It appeared to be a pretty general practice among them, to pull out one of their teeth; and when they were asked the reason of this remarkable custom, the only answer they gave was, that it was *teebu*, which was also the reason assigned by them for giving a lock of their hair.

After our water-casks had been filled, and some roots, salt, and salted fish had been purchased from the natives, captain Cook returned on board with all his people, intending to make another visit to the island the next day. But, about seven in the evening, the anchor of the *Resolution* started, so that she drove off the bank. By this accident, we found ourselves, at day-break the next morning, which was the 2d of February, nine miles to the leeward of our last station; and the captain, foreseeing that it would require more time to regain it than he chose to employ, made the signal for the *Discovery* to weigh anchor and join us. This junction was effected about noon; and both ships immediately directed their course to the northward, in prosecution of their voyage. Thus, after we had spent more time in the neighbourhood of these islands than was necessary to have answered all our purposes, we were obliged to quit them before we had completed our stock of water, or procured from them such a plentiful supply of refreshments as the natives were both able and willing to have furnished us with. Our ship, however, obtained

from them
and capta
acquired
the Disc
The o
abled to
of Mr A
dered him
are as fol
The
been disc
have been
single int
few in pr
bability,
which se
veral clu
ed Arch
decision
them, w
heow, C
is a smal
four or
Oncehee
with bir
so gaine
istence
bourhoo
six, we
both to
distingu
Sandwic
wich.
the latit

from them provisions that lasted at least three weeks; and captain Clerke, more fortunate than we were, acquired such a quantity of vegetables as sufficed the Discovery's people upwards of two months.

The observations which captain Cook was enabled to make on these islands, combined with those of Mr Anderson, whose abilities and assiduity rendered him a very useful assistant on such occasions, are as follow :

The islands in the Pacific Ocean, which have been discovered in the course of our late voyages, have been generally found situate in groups; the single intermediate isles, hitherto met with, being few in proportion to the rest; though, in all probability, there are many more of them yet unknown, which serve as gradations or steps between the several clusters. Of what number this new discovered Archipelago is composed, must be left to the decision of future navigators. We observed five of them, whose names are Woahoo, Atooi, Oneeheow, Oreehoua, and Tahoorā. The last of these is a small elevated island, at the distance of about four or five leagues from the southeast point of Oneeheow. We were informed that it abounds with birds, which are its sole inhabitants. We also gained some intelligence with regard to the existence of a low uninhabited island in the neighbourhood named Tammatapappa. Besides these six, we were told that there were some other islands both to the eastward and westward. Captain Cook distinguished the whole group by the name of the Sandwich Islands, in honour of the Earl of Sandwich. Those which he saw are situate between the latitude of $21^{\circ} 30'$, and $22^{\circ} 15'$ north, and

between the longitude of $199^{\circ} 20'$, and $201^{\circ} 30'$, east.

With respect to Woahoo, the most easterly of these islands, seen by us, we could get no other information, but that it is high land, and is inhabited.

Oreeheow, concerning which some particulars have been already mentioned, lies seven leagues to the westward of our anchoring-place at Atooi, and does not exceed fifteen leagues in circumference. Yams are its principal vegetable production. We procured some salt here, called by the natives *patai*, which is produced in salt ponds. With it they cure both fish and pork; and some salt fish, which we purchased from them, were extremely good, and kept very well. This island is chiefly low land, except the part opposite Atooi, which rises immediately from the sea to a considerable height, as does also its southeast point, which terminates in a round hill.

Of Oreehoua we knew no other particulars than that it is an elevated island, of small extent, lying close to the north side of Oreeheow.

Atooi, which is the largest of those we saw; we shall now proceed to lay before our readers such information as we are able to collect concerning it. From what we observed of it, it is, at least, ten leagues in length from east to west; from whence its circumference may nearly be guessed, though it appears to be much broader at the east than at the west point. The road, or anchoring-place which our vessel occupied, is on the southwest side of the island, about two leagues from the west end, before a village named Wymoa. As far as we sounded,

we found the bank free from rocks; except to the eastward of the village, where there projects a shoal, on which are some rocks and breakers. This road is somewhat exposed to the trade-wind; notwithstanding which defect, it is far from being a bad station, and greatly superior to those which necessity continually obliges ships to use, in countries where the winds are not only more variable, but more boisterous, as at Madeira, Teneriffe, the Azores, &c. The landing too is not so difficult as at most of those places; and, unless in very bad weather, is always practicable. The water in the neighbourhood is excellent, and may be conveyed with ease to the boats. But no wood can be cut at any convenient distance, unless the islanders could be prevailed upon to part with the few *ctoa* trees (for that is the name they give to the *cordia sebastina*) that grow about their villages, or a species called *doe doe*, which grows farther up the country.

The land does not in the least resemble, in its general appearance, any of the islands we have visited within the tropic of Capricorn; if we except its hills near the centre, which are high, but slope gradually towards the sea, or lower lands. Though it presents not to the view the delightful borders of Otaheite, or the luxuriant plains of Tongataboo, covered with trees, which at once afford a shelter from the scorching rays of the sun, a beautiful prospect to the eye, and food for the natives; yet its possessing a greater portion of gently rising land, renders it in some degree superior to the above-mentioned favourite islands, as being more capable of improvement. The height of the land

within, and the number of clouds which we saw during the whole time of our continuance, hanging over it, and not unfrequently on the other parts, seem to indicate that there is a sufficient supply of water, and that there are some running streams which we had not an opportunity of seeing particularly in the deep valleys, at the entrance of which the villages are in general situate. The ground, from the wooded part to the sea, is covered with an excellent kind of grass, about two feet in height, which sometimes grows in tufts, and appeared capable of being converted into abundant crops of fine hay. But on this extensive space not even a shrub grows naturally.

In the narrow valley leading to the *morai*, the soil is of a dark brown colour, rather loose; but, on the high ground, it is of a reddish brown, more stiff and clayey. It is probably the same all over the cultivated parts; for what adhered to most of the potatoes that we purchased, which doubtless came from very different spots, was of this sort. Its quality, however, may be better estimated from its productions than from its appearance. For the vale, or moist ground, produces *taro*, much larger than any we had ever seen; and the more elevated ground furnishes sweet potatoes, that seldom weigh less than two or three pounds, and frequently weigh ten, and sometimes a dozen or fourteen pounds.

Were we to judge of the climate from our experience, it might be said to be very variable; for, according to the general opinion, it was, at this time, the season of the year when the weather is supposed to be most settled, the sun being at his

greatest and moderate, many countries either from the cold here. consequence; counted for destitute

The road is a dark with some minute shrubs immense though not always bright did not appear below the much more. For, during the sides the coloured whiter or writing shows the native whitish part sort of bright attracted of metal cut artificial stones.

Beside the monuments, a variety of this, however

greatest annual distance. The heat was now very moderate, and few of those inconveniences to which many countries lying within the tropics are subject, either from heat or moisture, seem to be experienced here. Nor did we find any dews of consequence; a circumstance which may partly be accounted for, by the lower part of the country being destitute of trees.

The rock that constitutes the sides of the valley, is a dark grey ponderous stone, but honey-combed, with some spots of a rusty colour, and some very minute shining particles interspersed. It is of an immense depth, and seems to be divided into *strata*, though nothing is interposed; for the large pieces always broke off to a determinate thickness, and did not appear to have adhered to those that were below them. Other stones are, in all probability, much more various than in the southern islands. For, during the short time we remained here, besides the *lapis lydius*, we found a species of cream-coloured whet-stone, sometimes variegated with whiter or blacker veins, like marble; and common writing slate, as well as some of a coarser sort; and the natives brought us some pieces of a coarse whitish pumice stone. We also procured a brown sort of *hematites*, which, from its being strongly attracted by the magnet, discovered the quantity of metal it contained. What we saw of this was cut artificially, as were also the slates and whet-stones.

Besides the vegetables purchased by us as refreshments, among which were at least five or six varieties of plantains, the island produces bread-fruit: this, however, seems to be scarce, as we only saw

one tree of that species. There are also a few co-
coa-palms, some yams, the *kappe* of the Friendly
Islands, or Virginian *arum*; the *etoba* tree, and
odoriferous *gardenia*, or *cape jasmine*. We met with
several trees of the *dooe dooe*, that bear the oily nuts,
which are stuck upon a kind of skewer, and made
use of as candles. Our people saw them used in
the same manner at Oneeheow. We were not on
shore at Atooi except in the day time, and then
we observed the islanders wearing these nuts, hung
on strings, round their necks. There is a species
of *sida*, or Indian mallow; also the *morinda citri-
folia*, which is here called *none*; a species of *convul-
vulus*; the *ava*, or intoxicating pepper, besides
great quantities of gourds. These last grow to a
very large size, and are of a remarkable variety of
shapes, which are, perhaps, the effect of art.
Upon the dry sand, about the village, grew a plant
that had never been seen by any of us in this ocean,
of the size of a common thistle, and prickly; but
bearing a fine flower greatly resembling a white
poppy.

The scarlet birds, which were brought for sale,
were never met with alive; but we saw one small
one, about the size of a canary bird, of a deep
crimson colour. We also saw a large owl, two
brown hawks or kites, and a wild duck. We heard
from the natives the names of some other birds,
among which were the *otoo*, or bluish heron, and
the *torata*, a sort of whimbrel. It is probable that
the species of birds are numerous, if we may judge
by the quantity of fine yellow, green, and small,
velvet-like, blackish feathers used upon the cloaks,
and other ornaments, worn by these people.

Fish,
appearan
karel, w
a chalk
dorned v
ned up i
salted.

ly conve
titute of
novelty.

The
here wer
the same
South P
some rat
we had l

The i
and, in
remarkal
features.

women,
long; n
tinguish
countena
brown,

We hav
little mo
and we

have litt
guish th
There is

size, col
upon th
ugly, a

Fish, and other productions of the sea, were, to appearance, not various; as, besides the small mackerel, we only saw common mullets; a species of a chalky colour; a small brownish rock-fish, adorned with blue spots; a turtle, which was penned up in a pond; and three or four sorts of fish salted. The few shell-fish seen by us were chiefly converted into ornaments, though they were destitute of the recommendation either of beauty or novelty.

The only tame or domestic animals that we found here were hogs, dogs, and fowls, which were all of the same kind that we met with at the island of the South Pacific. There were also small lizards, and some rats, resembling those of every island which we had hitherto visited.

The inhabitants of Atooi are of the middle size, and, in general, stoutly made. They are neither remarkable for a beautiful shape, nor for striking features. Their visage, particularly that of the women, is sometimes round, but others have it long; nor can it justly be said that they are distinguished, as a nation, by any general cast of countenance. Their complexion is nearly of a nut brown, but some individuals are of a darker hue. We have already mentioned the women as being little more delicate than the men in their formation; and we may add, that, with few exceptions, they have little claim to those peculiarities that distinguish the sex in most other parts of the world. There is, indeed, a very remarkable equality in the size, colour, and figure of the natives of both sexes; upon the whole, however, they are far from being ugly, and have, to all appearance, few natural de-

formities of any kind. Their skin is not very soft nor shining; but their eyes and teeth are, for the most part, pretty good. Their hair, in general, is straight; and though its natural colour is usually black, they stain it, as at the Friendly and other islands. We perceived but few instances of corpulence, and these more frequently among the women than the men; but it was principally among the latter that personal defects were observed; though, if any of them can lay claim to a share of beauty, it appeared to be most conspicuous amongst the young men.

They are active, vigorous, and most expert swimmers; leaving their canoes upon the most frivolous occasion, diving under them, and swimming to others, though at a considerable distance. We have frequently seen women, with infants at the breast, when the surf was so high as to prevent their landing in the canoes, leap overboard, and swim to the shore, without endangering their little ones.

They appear to be of a frank, chearful disposition; and are equally free from the fickle levity which characterises the inhabitants of Otaheite, and the sedate cast which is observable among many of those of Tongataboo. They seem to cultivate a sociable intercourse with each other; and, except the propensity of thieving, which is, as it were, innate in most of the people we have visited in these seas, they were extremely friendly to us. And it does no small credit to their sensibility, without flattering ourselves, that when they saw the different articles of our European manufacture, they could not refrain from expressing their astonish-

ment, but to apply
selves; have a p
a behavi
racter fr
ed Japa
It was p
women
cricity th
tender o
those sa
rather n
regard a

From
every vi
jectured
numerou
might p
villages
if we al
be in ev
upon th
aggrat
sand pe
it could
of the m

The
already
larger p
from ju
times l
thrown
the gro

ment, by a mixture of joy and concern, that seemed to apply the case as a lesson of humility to themselves; and, on every occasion, they appeared to have a proper consciousness of their own inferiority, a behaviour that equally exempts their national character from the ridiculous pride of the more polished Japanese, and of the ruder native of Greenland. It was pleasing to observe with what affection the women managed their infants, and with what alacrity the men contributed their assistance in such a tender office; thus distinguishing themselves from those savages who consider a wife and child as things rather necessary than desirable, or worthy of their regard and esteem.

From the numbers that we saw assembled at every village as we coasted along, it may be conjectured that the inhabitants of this island are pretty numerous. Including the straggling houses, there might perhaps be, in the whole island, sixty such villages as that near which our ships anchored; and, if we allow five persons to each house, there would be in every village five hundred, or thirty thousand upon the island. This number is by no means exaggerated; for there were sometimes three thousand people at least collected upon the beach, when it could not be supposed that above the tenth part of the natives were present.

The ordinary dress of both sexes has been already described. The women have often much larger pieces of cloth wrapped about them, extending from just below the breasts to the hams, and sometimes lower; and several were observed with pieces thrown loosely over their shoulders, which covered the greatest part of the body; but the children,

when very young, are entirely naked. They wear nothing upon the head; but the hair both of men and women is cut in various forms; and the general fashion, particularly among the latter, is to have it short behind, and long before. The men frequently had it cut on each side, in such a manner, that the remaining part somewhat resembled the crest of their caps or helmets, before mentioned. Both sexes, however, seemed to be very careless about their hair, and had no combs nor any thing of the kind to dress it with. The men sometimes twist it into a number of separate parcels, like the tails of a wig, each about as thick as a finger; though most of these, which are so long as to reach far down the back, are artificially fixed upon the head over their own hair.

Contrary to the general practice of most of the islands of the Pacific Ocean, the people of the Sandwich Isles have not their ears perforated, nor do they wear any ornaments in them. Both men and women, however, adorn themselves with necklaces composed of bunches of small black cord, like our hat-string, often above a hundred fold, entirely resembling those we saw worn at Wateoo, except that, instead of the two little balls on the middle before, they fix a small piece of wood, stone, or shell, about two inches in length, with a broad hook, well polished. They have also necklaces of many strings of very small shells, or of the dried flowers of the Indian mallow; and they sometimes hang round their necks a small human figure of bone, about the length of three inches. The women likewise wear bracelets of a single shell, pieces of black wood, with bits of ivory interspersed, and

neatly p
closely t
ced para
outward
formed
The me
feathers
tened ro
and for
white d
end. T
a kind o
more, c
ously va
the arm
shell-w

The
their ha
quently
dividual
we had
executed
the arm
the cust
do not
have it
with a

Then
near an
tered a
these h
forty to
in bread
hovels.

neatly polished, fastened together by a string drawn closely through them, or others of hog's teeth, placed parallel to each other, with the concave part outward, and the points cut off; some of which, formed only of large boar's tusks, are very elegant. The men sometimes fix on their heads plumes of feathers of the tropic bird, or those of cocks, fastened round neat polished sticks, two feet in length; and for the same purpose they sew the skin of a white dog's tail over a stick, with its tuft at the end. They also not unfrequently wear on the head a kind of ornament, of the thickness of a finger or more, covered with yellow and red feathers, curiously varied, and tied behind; and on that part of the arm which is above the elbow, a sort of broad shell-work grounded upon net-work.

The men sometimes puncture themselves upon their hands or arms, and near the groin; but frequently we saw no marks at all, though a few individuals had more of this species of ornament than we had usually seen at other places, and curiously executed in a great variety of lines and figures, on the arms and fore part of the body. Contrary to the custom of the Friendly and Society Islands, they do not slit or cut off any part of the *prepuce*; but have it universally drawn over the *glans*, and tied with a string.

There is no appearance of defence or fortification near any of their villages, and the houses are scattered about, without the least order. Some of these habitations are large and commodious, from forty to fifty feet in length, and twenty or thirty in breadth, while others of them are contemptible hovels. Their figure resembles that of hay-stacks;

or perhaps a better idea may be conceived of them, by supposing the roof of a barn placed on the ground, in such a manner as to form a high acute ridge, with two low sides. The gable at each end corresponding to the sides, makes these dwelling-places close all round; and they are well thatched with long grass, which is laid on slender poles. The entrance is made either in the end or side, and is an oblong hole, extremely low; it is often shut up by a board of planks fastened together, which serves as a door; but, as it has no hinges, must be removed occasionally. No light enters the house except by this opening; and though such close habitations may be comfortable places of retreat in bad weather, they seem but ill adapted to the warm climate of this country. They are kept remarkably clean, and the floors are strewn with dried grass, over which mats are spread to sit and sleep on. At one end stands a bench about three feet high, on which the domestic utensils are placed. These consist of gourd-shells, which the natives convert into vessels that serve as bottles to hold water, and as baskets to contain their food, and other things; and also of a few wooden bowls and trenchers of various size.

From what we saw growing, and from what was brought to market, we have no doubt that sweet potatoes, *taro*, and plantains, constitute the principal part of their vegetable diet; and that yams and bread-fruit are rather to be considered as rarities. Of animal food they appear to be in no want, as they have great numbers of hogs, which run without restraint about the houses; and if they eat dogs, which is not altogether improbable, their

stock
quantities
cated
food
fish, a
gourd
purpos
and se
stragg
is doub
bottom
it whic
ness.

The
heated
we saw
the inh
able n
mon c
animal
has be
dresse
which
practi
utensi
or ste
was a
devou
off a
were
men,
with
least

T

stock of these seemed very considerable. The quantities of fishing-hooks found among them indicated that they procure a tolerable supply of animal food from the sea. They have a custom of salting fish, and likewise pork, which they preserve in gourd shells. The salt which they use for this purpose is of a reddish colour, but not very coarse, and seems to be nearly the same with what our stragglers found at Christmas Island. Its colour is doubtless derived from a mixture of mud at the bottom of the part where it is formed; for some of it which adhered in lumps was of a tolerable whiteness.

They bake the vegetable articles of food with heated stones; and from the great quantity which we saw dressed at one time, we imagined that all the inhabitants of a village, or at least a considerable number of people, joined in the use of a common oven. We did not perceive them dress any animal food at this island; but Mr Gore's party, as has been already mentioned, observed that it was dressed at Oneeheow in the same kind of ovens, which makes it highly probable that this is also the practice in Atooi; particularly as we met with no utensil there that could serve the purpose of boiling or stewing. The only animal dish we saw there was a *taro* pudding, which, though very sour, was devoured with avidity by the natives. They eat off a sort of wooden trenchers; and, as far as we were enabled to judge from one instance, the women, if restrained from feeding at the same dish with the men, as is the custom at Otaheite, are at least allowed to eat in the same place near them.

The amusements of these people are various.

We did not see the dances at which they use the feathered cloaks and caps; but, from the motions which they made with their hands on other occasions, when they sung, we judged they were somewhat similar to those we had met with at the southern islands, though not so skilfully performed. They had not among them either flutes or reeds; and the only two musical instruments seen by us were of an extremely rude kind. One of them does not produce a melody superior to that of a child's rattle. It consists of what may be denominated a conic cap inverted, but very little hollowed at the base, made of a sedge-like plant. The upper part of which, and likewise the edges, are embellished with beautiful red feathers, and to the point, or lower part, is fixed a gourd-shell. Into this they put something to rattle, which is done by holding the instrument by the small part, and shaking it briskly before the face, at the same time striking the breast with the other hand. The other instrument was a hollow vessel of wood, not unlike a platter, combined with the use of two sticks, on which one of our gentlemen observed a man performing. He held one of the sticks, about two feet in length, with one hand, in the same manner as we hold a violin, and struck it with the other which was smaller, and resembled a drum-stick, in a quicker or slower measure, beating with his foot at the same time upon the hollow vessel, that lay upon the ground inverted, and thus producing a tune that was not disagreeable. This music was accompanied by the vocal performance of some women, whose song had a pleasing effect.

They have great numbers of small polished rods,

of th
thick
of lo
Thes
We s
holdi
broug
grou
his b
bowls
shape
at the
lished
brow
same
also u
writin
In
there
genui
the m
ner as
some
Its te
that
tione
tants
infini
Thei
the r
is am
thing
We
they

of the length of between four and five feet, rather thicker than the rammer of a musquet, with a tuft of long white dog's hair fixed on the small end. These they probably make use of in their diversions. We saw a native take one of them in his hand, and holding it up, give a smart stroke, till it was brought into an horizontal position, striking the ground with his foot on the same side, and beating his breast with his other hand. They play at bowls with pieces of whetstone above mentioned, shaped somewhat like a small cheese, but rounded at the edges and sides, which are very neatly polished. They have other bowls made of a reddish brown clay, glazed over with a composition of the same colour, or of a coarse dark grey slate. They also use as quoits small flat roundish pieces of the writing-slate, scarcely a quarter of an inch thick.

In the different manufactures of these people there appears to be an extraordinary degree of ingenuity and neatness. Their cloth is made from the *morus papyrifera*, and doubtless in the same manner as at Tongataboo and Otaheite; for we bought some of the grooved sticks with which they beat it. Its texture, however, though thicker, is inferior to that of the cloth of either of the places just mentioned; but in colouring or staining it the inhabitants of Atooi display a superiority of taste, by the infinite variety of figures which they execute. Their colours indeed are not very bright, except the red; but the regularity of the figures and stripes is amazing; for, as far as we know, they have nothing like stamps or prints to make the impressions. We had no opportunity of learning in what manner they produce their colours; but, besides the varie-

gated sorts, they have some pieces of plain white cloth, and others of a single colour, particularly light blue and dark brown. In general, the pieces brought to us were about the breadth of two feet, and four or five yards in length, being the form and quantity made use of by them for their common dress, or *maro*; and even some of these were composed of pieces sewed together. They have also a particular sort that is thin, and greatly resembles oil-cloth, and which is either oiled or soaked in some kind of varnish. They fabricate numbers of white mats, which are strong, with many red stripes, rhombuses, and other figures interwoven on one side. These, in all probability, occasionally make a part of their dress; for when they offered them to sale they put them on their backs. They manufacture others of a coarser sort, plain and strong, which they spread over their floors to sleep upon.

They stain their gourd-shells neatly with undulated lines, triangles, and other figures of a black colour. They also seem to be acquainted with the art of varnishing; for some of these stained gourd-shells are covered with a sort of lacker; and on other occasions they make use of a strong size, or glutinous substance, to fasten things together. Their wooden dishes and bowls, out of which they drink their *ava*, are of the *etooa* tree, or *cordia*, extremely neat and well polished. They also make small square fans of mat or wicker-work, with handles of the same, or of wood, tapering from them, which are curiously wrought with small cords of hair and cocoa-nut fibres intermixed. Their fishing-hooks are ingeniously made, some of bone, many of pearl-shell, and others of wood, pointed

with b
and co
a barb
outside
being
one wa
single
of whic
artist.
tion, v
their to
thern
were
formed
one.
of a si
to the
to a th
the oth
a little
and are
The
they pe
iron ho
into a v
we sup
broad-s
of thes
use of
imagin
tors of
which
perfect
reconci

with bone. The bones are for the most part small, and consist of two pieces, and the various sorts have a barb, either on the inside, like ours, or on the outside; but others have both, the exterior one being farthest from the point. Of the latter sort one was procured, nine inches in length, made of a single piece of bone, the elegant form and polish of which could not be exceeded by any European artist. They polish their stones, by constant friction, with pumice-stone, in water; and such of their tools as we saw, resembled those of the southern islanders. Their hatchets, or rather adzes, were exactly the same pattern, and were either formed of a blackish stone, or of a clay-coloured one. They have also small instruments composed of a single shark's tooth, some of which are fixed to the fore part of the jaw-bone of a dog, and others to a thin wooden handle, of a similar shape, and at the other end there is a bit of string fastened through a little hole. These serve occasionally as knives, and are probably used in carving.

The only iron tools seen among them, and which they possessed before our arrival, were a piece of iron hook, about the length of two inches, fitted into a wooden handle, and another edge tool, which we supposed to have been made of the point of a broad-sword. Their having the actual possession of these, and their being well acquainted with the use of this metal, inclined some of our people to imagine that we were not the first European visitors of these islands. But the very great surprise which they testified on seeing our ships, and the perfect ignorance of the use of fire-arms, cannot be reconciled with such an opinion. There are seve-

ral means by which such people may obtain pieces of iron, or acquire the knowledge of the existence of that metal, without having had an immediate connection with those nations that use it. It can scarcely be doubted that it was unknown to all the inhabitants of the Pacific Ocean till Magellan led the way to it; for no navigator immediately after his voyage found any of this metal in their possession, though in the course of our late voyages it has been remarked that the use of it was known at several islands, which no former European vessels had ever to our knowledge visited. At all the places where Mendana touched, during his two voyages, some of it must have been left; and this would doubtless extend the knowledge of it to all the various islands with which the people whom he visited had any immediate intercourse. It might even have been carried farther; and where specimens of this valuable article could not be met with, descriptions might in some degree serve to make it known, when afterwards seen. The next voyage to the southward of the equator, in which any intercourse was had with the people who inhabit the islands of this ocean, was that of Quiros, who landed at Sagittaria, the Island of Handsome People, and at Tierra del Espiritu Santo; at all which places, as well as at those with which they had any communication, it must undoubtedly have been made known. To him succeeded, in this navigation, Le Maire and Schouten, whose connections with the natives began much farther to the eastward, and terminated at Cocos and Horn Islands. It is certain that the inhabitants of Otaheite and the Society Isles had a knowledge of iron, and pur-

chased it
Wallis d
have acc
of those
originall
this was
ed us, t
the arriv
chief, w
ceived n
of them
holes.
we four
place lon
been th
and thos
with the
that isla
useful m
those of
tion for
our shor
The
the kno
out the
had an
it may
tory of
siderabl
eagerne
cure pl
of thes
sent co
Atooi

chased it with the greatest avidity, when captain Wallis discovered Otaheite; and they could only have acquired this knowledge through the mediation of those neighbouring islands at which it had been originally left. They acknowledge, indeed, that this was really the case; and they have since informed us, that they held it in such estimation, before the arrival of captain Wallis, that an Otaheitean chief, who had gained possession of two nails, received no small emolument, by letting out the use of them to his neighbours for the purpose of boring holes. The natives of the Society Islands, whom we found at Watecoo, had been driven to that place long after the knowledge and use of iron had been thus introduced among their countrymen; and though, perhaps, they had no specimen of it with them, they would naturally communicate at that island, by description, their knowledge of this useful metal. From the people of Watecoo, again, those of Hervey's Island might derive that inclination for it, of which we had sufficient proofs during our short intercourse with them.

The consideration of these facts will show how the knowledge of iron has been conveyed throughout the Pacific Ocean, to islands which have never had an immediate connection with Europeans; and it may easily be imagined, that, wherever the history of it only has been reported, or a very inconsiderable quantity of it has been left, the greater eagerness will be shown by the inhabitants to procure plentiful supplies of it. The application of these particulars, to the object of our present consideration, is manifest. The natives of Atooi and Oneeheow, without having ever been

visited by Europeans before us, might have received this metal from intermediate islands, situate between them and the Ladrones, which the Spaniards have frequented almost ever since the period of Magellan's voyage. Or, if the distant western position of the Ladrones should detract from the probability of this solution, is there not the American continent to windward, where the Spaniards have been settled for upwards of two centuries and a half; during which long space of time, shipwrecks must frequently have happened on its coasts? It cannot be deemed surprising, that part of such wrecks, containing iron, should, by the easterly trade-winds, be occasionally cast upon some of these islands which are dispersed about this immense ocean. The distance of Atooi from America is no argument against this supposition; and even if it were, it would not destroy it. This ocean is annually traversed by Spanish vessels; and it is highly probable, that, besides the accident of losing a mast and its appendages, casks with iron hoops, and many other things that contain iron, may fall, or be thrown overboard during so long a passage, and thus find their way to land. These are not mere conjectures; for one of captain Cook's people actually saw some wood in a house at Wymoa, which he supposed to be fir: it was worm-eaten, and the natives informed him, that it had been driven ashore by the waves; and we had their own express testimony, that they had obtained, from some places to the eastward, the specimens of iron found among them.

From this digression (if it can justly be called so) let us return to the observations made during our continuance at Atooi. The canoes of these

people
length
a sing
ness o
each e
each a
to the
stern,
somev
more
each e
As th
those
have e
more
are ro
served
light
The r
smalle
neatly
Th
cultu
tion o
the a
potat
on th
gular
close
in th
bale
The
may
as na

people are commonly about four and twenty feet in length, and have the bottom, in general, formed of a single piece of wood, hollowed out to the thickness of an inch or more, and brought to a point at each end. The sides are composed of three boards, each about an inch thick, neatly fitted and lashed to the bottom. The extremities, both at head and stern, are a little elevated, and both are made sharp, somewhat resembling a wedge, but they flatten more abruptly, so that the two side-boards join each other, side by side, for upwards of a foot. As they seldom exceed a foot and a half in breadth, those that go single (for they sometimes join them) have out-riggers, which are shaped and fitted with more judgment than any we had before seen. They are rowed by paddles, such as we had generally observed at other islands; and some of them have a light triangular sail, extended to a mast and boom. The ropes which they use for their boats, and the smaller cords for their fishing-tackle are strong and neatly made.

They are by no means novices in the art of agriculture. The vale-ground is one continued plantation of *taro* and some other articles, which have all the appearance of being carefully attended to. The potatoe-fields, and spots of sugar-cane or plantains, on the higher grounds, are planted with great regularity; but neither these nor the others are inclosed with any fence, unless we consider the ditches in the low grounds as such; which, it is more probable, are designed to convey water to the *taro*. The great quantity and excellence of these articles may perhaps be as much owing to skilful culture as natural fertility of soil, which seems better adapt-

ed to them than to bread-fruit and cocoa-nut trees; the few we saw of these latter not being in a thriving state. Notwithstanding the skill in agriculture, the island, from its general appearance, seemed to be capable of more extensive improvement, and of maintaining thrice as many inhabitants as are now upon it; for the greater part of it, that now lies waste, was apparently as good a soil as those parts that are cultivated. It must therefore be inferred, that these people do not increase in that proportion which would render it necessary for them to take advantage of the extent of their island, towards raising a greater quantity of its vegetable productions for their maintenance.

Though captain Cook did not see a chief of any note, there were, however, several, as the islanders informed us, who reside at Atooi, and to whom they prostrate themselves as a mark of homage and respect. This prostration seems equivalent to the *moe moea* paid to the chiefs of the Friendly Islands, and is here denominated *hamoea* or *moe*. Whether they were, at first, afraid to show themselves, or happened to be absent, we cannot determine; but, after the Resolution had left the island, one of these great men made his appearance, and visited captain Clerke on board the Discovery; he came off in a double canoe; and, like the sovereign of the Friendly Isles, paid no regard to the small canoes that chanced to be in his way, but ran against, or over them, without making the least attempt to avoid them. And it was impossible for these poor people to avoid him, for they could not then manage their canoes; it being a necessary mark of their submission, that they should lie down till he had passed.

His attendants assisted him in getting on board the ship, and placed him in the gang-way, where they stood round him, holding each other by the hands; nor would they suffer any one to approach him but captain Clerke himself. He was a young man, apparelled from head to foot, and was accompanied by a young woman, who was perhaps his wife. His name was said to be Tamahano. Captain Clerke having made him some presents, received from him in return a large bowl, supported by two figures of men, the carving of which displayed some degree of skill, both with respect to the design and the execution. This bowl used to be filled with the *kava* or *ava*, (as it is termed at Otaheite) which liquor is prepared and drank here as at the other islands of the Pacific Ocean. Captain Clerke could not prevail upon this chief to go below, nor to move from the spot where his attendants had first placed him. After remaining some time in the ship, he was carried back into his canoe, and returned to the island. The following day several messages were sent to captain Clerke, inviting him to return the visit on shore, and giving him to understand, that the chief had prepared a considerable present for the occasion; but the captain being anxious to get out to sea and join the Resolution, did not think proper to accept of the invitation.

The short and imperfect intercourse we had with the natives did not enable us to form any accurate judgment of the form of government established amongst them; but, from the general similarity of customs, and particularly from what we observed of the honours paid to their chiefs, it seems reasonable to imagine, that it is of the same nature with that

which prevails in all the islands we had hitherto visited; and, in all probability, their wars among themselves are equally frequent. This, indeed, might be inferred from the number of weapons which we found in their possession, and from the excellent order in which they kept them. But we had proofs of the fact from their own confession; and, as we were informed, these wars are carried on between the different districts of their own island, as well as between it and the neighbouring inhabitants of the isles of Oneeheow and Oreehoua. We scarcely need assign any other cause besides this, to account for the appearance before mentioned, of their population not being proportioned to the extent of their ground that is capable of cultivation.

Besides their spears, formed of a fine brownish wood, beautifully polished, some of which are barbed at one end, and flattened to a point at the other, they have a kind of weapon which we had never met with before. It somewhat resembles a dagger, and is, in general, about eighteen inches in length, sharpened at one or both ends, and secured to the hand by a string. Its use is to stab in close combat, and it seems well adapted to that purpose. Some of these may be denominated double daggers, having a handle in the middle, with which they are the better enabled to strike different ways. They have likewise bows and arrows; but, from their slender construction, and their apparent scarcity, it is probable that they never make use of them in battle. The knife or saw, already mentioned, with which they dissect the dead bodies of their enemies, may also be ranked among their weapons,

herto vi-
among
indeed,
weapons
from the
But we
fession;
carried
eir own
uring in-
reehoua.
besides
re men-
ortioned
of cul-

rownish
re barb-
e other,
d never
dagger,
length,
to the
se com-
urpose:
aggers,
hey are
They
n their
city, it
hem in
tioned,
f their
eapons,



THE INSIDE OF THE HOUSE. IN THE MORAI IN A TOOL.

as they bo
in close fig
about a fo
ed at the
shark's tee
wards; an
through w
wrap sever
jectured th
we procure
stone, arti
nally divid
of the con
one of the
pose of it,
with the s
prove fatal
We likewi
polished,
towards ea
stones seen
1774, and

As som
method of
an affinity
thenatives
mention a
in a strikin
gataboo h
they also
not, to ou
even vege
do not int
by time a

as they both strike and cut with it when engaged in close fight. It is a small flat wooden instrument, about a foot in length, of an oblong shape, rounded at the corners; its edges are surrounded with shark's teeth strongly fixed to it, and pointing outwards; and it has generally a hole in the handle, through which passes a long string, which they wrap several times round the wrist. We also conjectured that they use slings on some occasions; we procured some pieces of the *hematites* or blood-stone, artificially made of an oval form, longitudinally divided, with a narrow groove in the middle of the convex part. To this, the person who had one of them applied a thin cord, but would not dispose of it, though he was not unwilling to part with the stone, which, as it weighed a pound, must prove fatal when thrown with some degree of force. We likewise saw some pieces of whet-stone neatly polished, of an oval figure, but somewhat pointed towards each end; nearly resembling in shape some stones seen by captain Cook at New Caledonia in 1774, and made use of there in slings.

As some of their religious institutions, and their method of disposing of their dead, strongly indicate an affinity between the manners of these people and of the natives of the Friendly and Society Islands, we shall mention a few particulars that will serve to place this in a striking point of view. The inhabitants of Tongataboo bury their dead with great decency, and they also inter their human sacrifices; but they do not, to our knowledge, offer any other animals, or even vegetables to their deities. The Otaheiteans do not inter their dead, but expose them to waste by time and putrefaction, though they afterwards

bury the bones ; and, this being the case, it is remarkable, that they should inter the entire bodies of their human sacrifices. They also offer up to their gods other animals and vegetables ; but are far from being attentive to the condition of the places, where they celebrate those solemn rites ; most of their *morais* being in a ruinous state, and showing manifest tokens of neglect. The people of Atooi, again, bury both their common dead and their human sacrifices as at Tongataboo ; but they resemble those of Otaheite, in offering vegetables and animals to their gods, and in the neglected state of their religious places.

The *taboo* also prevails in Atooi, in its full extent, and apparently with greater strictness than even at Tongataboo. For the natives here always asked with great eagerness, and with indications of a fear of offending, whether any particular thing which they desired to see, or we were unwilling to show, was *taboo*, or (as they pronounced the word) *tafoo* ? The *maia raa*, or prohibited articles at the Society Islands, though undoubtedly the same thing, did not appear to be so rigorously observed by them, except with regard to the dead ; respecting whom we thought them more superstitious than any of the others were. These, however, are circumstances concerning which we cannot pretend to speak decisively ; and we shall only observe, to show the similitude in other points connected with religion, that the *tabounas* or priests seem to be as numerous here as at the other islands.

But whatever resemblance we might discover between the general manners of the inhabitants of Atooi and those of Otaheite, these were less strik-

ing than
languag
entirely
ral, hav
of the N
it which
and they
the Ota
whole id
same aff
same me
hearing,
agreeme
natives o
with the
adapt th
their lan
even con
whereas,
used the
speech,
among y
knowled
was coll
Anderso
dering o
selves in
that hav
cing of
cidence
How
many d
other, i
find it,
the San

ing than the similarity of language. Indeed, the languages of both places may be said to be almost entirely the same. The people of Atooi, in general, have neither the strong guttural pronunciation of the New-Zealanders, nor that smaller degree of it which also distinguishes the Friendly Islanders; and they have not only adopted the soft mode of the Otaheiteans, in avoiding harsh sounds, but the whole idiom of their language; making use of the same affixes and suffixes to their words, and the same measure and cadence in their songs; at first hearing, indeed, a stranger may perceive some disagreement; but it should be considered, that the natives of Otaheite, from their frequent connections with the English, had learned, in some measure, to adapt themselves to our imperfect knowledge of their languages, by using the most common and even corrupted expressions in conversation with us; whereas, when they talked with each other, and used the several parts necessary to propriety of speech, they were hardly at all understood by those among us, who made the greatest progress in the knowledge of their vocabulary. A list of words was collected at Atooi, by the indefatigable Mr Anderson, who embraced every opportunity of rendering our voyage useful to those who amuse themselves in tracing the emigrations of the various tribes that have peopled the globe, by the most convincing of all arguments, that drawn from the coincidence of language.

How widely has this nation diffused itself, in so many detached islands, so far distant from each other, in every quarter of the Pacific Ocean: We find it, from New-Zealand, in the South, as far as the Sandwich Islands to the northward; and in

another direction, from Easter Island, to the New Hebrides : that is, over an extent of sixty degrees of latitude, or three thousand six hundred miles, north and south ; and eighty three degrees of longitude, or four thousand nine hundred and eighty miles, east and west ! How much further, in either of those directions, its colonies reach, is not known ; but, from what we are already acquainted with, we are authorised in pronouncing it to be the most extensive nation upon earth, though, perhaps, not the most numerous.

If the Sandwich Islands had been discovered at an early period by the Spaniards, they would doubtless have availed themselves of so excellent a situation, and have made use of Atooi, or some other of the islands, as a place of refreshment for the ships that sail annually between Manilla and Acapulco. They lie almost mid-way between the last mentioned place and Guam, one of the Ladrões, which is at present their only port in traversing this vast ocean ; and it would not have been a week's sail out of their ordinary route to have touched at them. An acquaintance with the Sandwich Isles would also have been equally favourable to our Buccaneers, who have sometimes passed from the coast of America to the Ladrões, with a stock of provisions and water scarcely adequate to the support of life. Here they might always have met with a plentiful supply, and have been within a month's sail of the very part of California which the Manilla ship is obliged to make. How happy would Lord Anson have been, and what difficulties would he have avoided, had he known that there was a cluster of islands half way between America and Tinian, where all his wants might have been effectually relieved !

P A

Curious
Interco
—The
sional
—The
ments—
—Man
utensils
and m
and me
plemen
marks

TH
from the
the San
breaking
VOL.

V O Y A G E

TO THE

PACIFIC OCEAN.

BOOK IV.

CONTENTS.

Curious marine phenomena—Arrival at Nootka Sound—
Intercourse with the natives—Description of their persons
—Their colour—Common dress and ornaments—Occa-
sional dresses and monstrous decorations of wooden masks
—Their general dispositions—Songs—Musical instru-
ments—Their eagerness to possess iron and other metals
—Manner of building their houses—Their furniture and
utensils—Wooden images—Their employments—Food,
and manner of preparing it—Weapons—Manufactures
and mechanic arts—Carving and painting—Canoes—Im-
plements for fishing and hunting—Iron tools, and re-
marks on their method of procuring that metal.

THE Discovery having joined us, we stood
away to the northward, with a gentle gale
from the east. The tides are so inconsiderable at
the Sandwich Islands, that, with the great surf
breaking against the shore, it was difficult, at all

times, to know whether we had high or low water, or whether it ebbed or flowed. On the south side of Atooi a current generally set to the westward or northwestward; but when we were at anchor off Oneeheow, we found a current setting nearly north-west and southeast, six hours each way. This was doubtless a regular tide, and the flood appeared to come from the northwest.

But, to avoid digression, on Saturday the 7th of February, we were in the latitude of 29° north, and in the longitude of 200° east, the wind veering to southeast. We steered northeast and east till the 12th, when the wind had veered round to north-east and east-northeast. We then tacked and stood to the northward, being in the latitude of 30° north, and in the longitude of $206^{\circ} 15'$ east. In this advanced latitude, and even in the winter season, we had only begun to feel a sensation of cold in the mornings and evenings; a proof of the equal and durable influence of the heat of the sun, at all times, to 30° on each side the line. After that the disproportion is known to become very great. This must be principally attributed to the direction of the sun's rays, independent of the bare distance, which is not equal to the effect. On Thursday the 19th of February, the wind veered to southeast, and we were again enabled to steer to the east, inclining a little to the north. On the 25th, we reached the latitude of $42^{\circ} 30'$, and the longitude of 219° ; when we began to meet with the rock-weed, mentioned in Lord Anson's voyage by the name of sea-leek, which is generally seen by the Manilla ships. Sometimes a piece of wood appeared; but if we had not known that we were near

the co
suppos
that w
thousa
Islands
oceanic

On
was su
which
land.
to the
appear
north,
time o
marka
very se
of Jun
part o
takes
snowy
ordina

It i
with
the sa
must
from
be co
beyon
and t
where
difor
On
of th
slime

the continent of North America, we might have supposed, from the few signs of vicinity of land that we had seen, that we were not within some thousand leagues of any. Since we left Sandwich Islands, we had hardly beheld a bird, or any other oceanic animal.

On the 1st of March we had a calm day, which was succeeded by a wind from the north, with which we stood to the east, intending to make land. We ought to have been near it, according to the charts. Such moderate and mild weather appeared to us extraordinary, when we were so far north, and so near an extensive continent, at this time of the year. The season must have been remarkably mild, for Sir Francis Drake met with very severe cold in this latitude, even in the month of June. Viscaino, indeed, who was in the same part of the world, in the depth of winter, hardly takes notice of the cold, and mentions a ridge of snowy mountains on this coast as something extraordinary.

It is a singular circumstance that we should meet with so few birds, compared to those we saw in the same latitudes to the south of the line. This must either proceed from a scarcity of them, or from a deficiency of resting-places. Hence it may be concluded, that in the southern hemisphere, beyond 40° , the species are much more numerous, and the islands more plentifully scattered than any where near that latitude, between the coast of California and Japan.

On the morning of the 2d, during a calm, part of the sea appeared to be covered with a kind of slime, and some small sea animals were seen swim-

ming about. Those which were most conspicuous were of the gelatinous kind, almost globular; a smaller sort had a white or shining appearance, and were in great abundance. Some of the latter were put into a glass cup, with some salt water; and when in a prone situation, they appeared like small scales or pieces of silver.

When they swam about, which they did with equal ease in various directions, they emitted the brightest colours of the most valuable gems, according to their position respecting the light. At one time they appeared pellucid, at another displaying the various tints of blue, from a sapphirine to a violet, mixed with a kind of ruby, and glowing with sufficient strength to illuminate the glass and water. When the vessel was held to the strongest light the tints appeared most vivid, but almost vanished when the animals subsided to the bottom, and they had then a brownish appearance. By candle-light the colour was principally a beautiful pale green, with a kind of burnished gloss; and in the dark it faintly exhibited a glowing fire.

They are a new species of *oniscus*, and were called by Mr Anderson *oniscus fulgens*; being supposed to be an animal that contributes to that lucid appearance often observed at sea in the night. Two large birds settled this day on the water near the ship. One was the *procellaria maxima*, and the other of little more than half the magnitude of the former, appearing to be of the *albatross* kind. It was larger than a sea-gull, but resembled it in other respects. About noon, on the 6th, we beheld two seals, and several whales, and early the next morning the long expected coast of New Albion was

seen, a
tending
were in
longitu
leagues

We
a mudd
a leagu
modera
hills an
No ver
except
east fr
the ne
med C
weathe

Aft
o'clock
up at
der an
at day
wind h
with
northe
on the
pearan
south
northe

In
north
weath
till ab
again
ternor

seen, at the distance of ten or twelve leagues, extending from northeast to southeast. At noon we were in the latitude of $44^{\circ} 39'$ north, and in the longitude of $235^{\circ} 20'$ east, and the land about eight leagues distant.

We had now seventy-three fathoms water, over a muddy bottom, and found ninety fathoms about a league farther off. The land, which was of a moderate height, appeared to be diversified with hills and valleys, and principally covered with wood. No very striking object, however, presenting itself, except a high hill with a flat summit, which bore east from us at noon. The land formed a point at the northern extreme, which captain Cook named *Cape Foul-weather*, from the exceeding bad weather we afterwards met with.

After variable light airs and calms, at eight o'clock in the evening of the 7th, a breeze sprung up at southwest. We stood to the northwest, under an easy sail, intending to range along the coast at day-light. But the next morning at four, the wind having shifted to northwest, it blew in squalls, with rain. Till near ten o'clock our course was northeast; but not being able to make any progress on this tack, and seeing nothing that had the appearance of a harbour, we tacked, and stood off southwest. Cape Foul-weather at this time bore northeast by north, distant about eight leagues.

In the evening of the 8th, the wind veered to the northwest, with squalls, hail, and sleet; and the weather being hazy and thick, we stood out to sea till about noon the next day, when we stood in again for the land, which we saw at two in the afternoon, bearing east-northeast. In the evening the

wind veered more to the west, and the weather grew worse, which obliged us to tack and stand off till about four the next morning, when we stood in again. In the afternoon at four we discovered the land, which at six was about eight leagues distant. Here we tacked and sounded, but could not reach the ground with a line of one hundred and sixty fathoms. We stood off till near midnight, and then stood in again. At half past six the next morning we were about three leagues from the land. Seeing nothing like a harbour, and the weather continuing unsettled, we tacked and stretched off southwest, having then fifty-five fathoms water.

The land which we approached when we tacked is moderately high, but in many places it rises still higher within. It is diversified with hills and rising grounds, many of which are covered with tall straight trees, and others which were not so high grew in spots, like clumps or coppices; but the spaces between, and the sides of the rising grounds were clear.

Though, perhaps, as a summer prospect this might be very agreeable, yet at this season it had an uncomfortable appearance, the bare grounds along the coast being covered with snow, which seemed to lie in abundance between the hills and rising grounds; and in many places towards the sea, had at a distance the appearance of white cliffs. On the rising ground the snow was thinner spread; and farther inland there seemed to be none at all. Hence it might, perhaps, be concluded, that the snow which we had seen towards the sea had fallen the preceding night, which was indeed the coldest

we had
and a k

The
not hav
a kind o
by some
the sno
into a
had see
called i
and its
treme t
in the
235° 5
by the
to a to
very lo
ternoon
the nig
were,
veered
us once

Cap
and the
bore s
leagues
its lon
situatio
Januar
marka
have p
discove
thing
having

we had experienced since our arrival on that coast ; and a kind of sleet sometimes fell.

The coast appeared almost straight in every part, not having any opening or inlet, and terminated in a kind of white sandy beach; though it was imagined by some on board that such appearance was owing to the snow. Each extreme of the land shot out into a point; the northern one was that which we had seen on the 7th, and therefore captain Cook called it *Cape Perpetua*. Its latitude is $44^{\circ} 6'$ north, and its longitude $235^{\circ} 52'$ east. The southern extreme the commodore named *Cape Gregory*. It lies in the latitude of $43^{\circ} 30'$, and in the longitude of $235^{\circ} 57'$ east. This point is rendered remarkable, by the land of it rising immediately from the sea, to a tolerable height, and that on each side of it is very low. We stood off till almost one in the afternoon, and then tacked and stood in, hoping in the night to have the wind off from the land. We were, however, mistaken, for at five o'clock it veered to the west and southwest, which induced us once more to stand out to sea.

Cape Perpetua now bore northeast by north; and the farthest land to the south of Cape Gregory bore south by east, distant about ten or twelve leagues. Its latitude will therefore be $43^{\circ} 10'$, and its longitude $235^{\circ} 55'$ east. This is nearly the situation of Cape Blanco, discovered the 19th of January, 1603, by Martine d'Aguilar. It is remarkable, that in this very latitude geographers have placed a large entrance or strait, ascribing the discovery of it to the same navigator; whereas nothing more is mentioned in his voyage than his having discovered a large river in this situation,

which he would have entered, but was hindered by the currents.

The wind was now very unsettled, and blew in squalls, with snow showers. At midnight it shifted to west-northwest, and presently increased to a very hard gale, with heavy squalls, and sleet or snow. We had not a choice now, but were obliged to stretch to the southward, to get clear of the coast. This was done under more sail than the ships could bear with safety, but it was absolutely necessary to avoid the more imminent danger of being forced on shore. This gale abated at eight o'clock in the morning of the 13th, and then we stood in again for the land. The wind remained at west and northwest. Storms, breezes, and calms, alternately succeeded each other, till the morning of the 21st, when a breeze sprung up at southwest. This being accompanied with fair weather, we steered north-easterly, hoping to fall in with the land, beyond where we had been tossed about for the preceding fortnight. In the evening the wind shifted to the westward, and the next morning, about eight o'clock, we beheld the land at the distance of about nine leagues. Our latitude was now $47^{\circ} 5'$ north, and our longitude $235^{\circ} 10'$ east. We stood to the north, with a fine breeze, till near seven in the evening, when we tacked, in order to wait for day-light. We were now in forty-eight fathoms water, and four leagues from the land, extending from north to southeast; and a small round hill, which we supposed to be an island, bore north three quarters east, at the distance of about six or seven leagues. It seemed to

be of a
from the

The
this su
the lan
finding
nished
almost
low lar
the po
Its lat
3' east

All
pretty
wood,
very la
strait o
present
any su
southw
a gent
west, i
But be
rain, n
in for
or at l
got.
tinue
night.

Th
strong
the w
veer
a stor

be of a tolerable height, and could but just be seen from the deck.

There appeared to be a small opening between this supposed island and the northern extreme of the land; we therefore entertained some hopes of finding a harbour, but these hopes gradually vanished as we drew nearer, and at length we were almost convinced that the opening was closed by low land. The commodore, for this reason, named the point of land to the north of it *Cape Flattery*. Its latitude is $48^{\circ} 15'$ north, and its longitude $235^{\circ} 3'$ east.

All the land upon this part of the coast is of a pretty equal height, is principally covered with wood, and has a very fertile appearance. In this very latitude geographers have placed the pretended strait of Juan de Fuca; but nothing of that kind presented itself to our view, nor is it probable that any such thing ever existed. We stood to the southward till midnight, and then tacked, and with a gentle breeze at southwest steered to the north-west, intending at day-light to stand in for the land. But before that time we had a very hard gale, with rain, right on shore; instead, therefore, of running in for the land, we endeavoured to get an offing, or at least to preserve that which we had already got. The southwest wind, however, did not continue long, for it veered again to the west before night.

Thus were we perpetually encountering with strong west and northwest winds. In an evening the wind would sometimes become moderate, and veer southward; but this was a certain prelude to a storm, which blew the hardest at south-south-

east, and was generally accompanied with rain and sleet. In the course of six hours it was usually succeeded by a gale from the northwest, which introduced fair weather. About nine o'clock in the morning of Sunday the 29th, we again saw the land, the nearest part about six leagues distant. We were now in the latitude of $49^{\circ} 29'$ north, and in the longitude of $232^{\circ} 29'$ east.

The face of the country was very different from that of the parts which we had before seen: numbers of lofty mountains presented themselves to our view, whose summits were covered with snow. The valleys between them, and the land towards the coast, were covered with high straight trees, that appeared like a vast forest. A low point was formed at the southeast extreme of the land, off which are several breakers, occasioned by some sunken rocks. It was therefore called *Point Breakers*. Its latitude is $49^{\circ} 15'$ north, and its longitude $233^{\circ} 20'$ east. The latitude of the other extreme is about 50° , and the longitude 232° . This last was named *Woody Point*. It is high land, and projects to the southwest.

Between these two points a large bay is formed, which the commodore called *Hope Bay*; hoping, as he said, to find in it a good harbour; and the event proved that he was not mistaken. As we approached the coast, we saw the appearance of two inlets, one of which was in the northwest, and the other in the northeast corner of the bay. We bore up for the latter, and passed some breakers about a league from the shore. Half a league without them we had nineteen and twenty fathoms water; but after we had passed them the depth in-

creased
was un
The
not ye
being
chor,
which
advanc
longer
when
calmed
modor
order t
sprung
to an a
Here v
sary to
near th
hauser.
got wi
fathom

As
the ce
off to
becalm
ther si
near u
and sp
we sup
the sa
thers
threw
Th
sion w

creased to fifty fathoms; and farther in the ground was unfathomable with the greatest length of line.

Though appearances were in our favour, we were not yet certain that there were any inlets; but being in a deep bay, captain Cook resolved to anchor, in order to endeavour to get some water, which we began to be in much need of. As we advanced, however, the existence of the inlet no longer remained doubtful. Above five o'clock, when we reached the west point of it, we were becalmed for some time. In this situation the commodore ordered all the boats to be hoisted out, in order to tow the ships in. Presently a fresh breeze sprung up at northwest, with which we stretched up to an arm of the inlet, which ran in to the northeast. Here we were again becalmed, and found it necessary to anchor in eighty-five fathoms water, and so near the land as to be able to reach it with a hauser. The Discovery was becalmed before she got within the arm, where she anchored in seventy fathoms water.

As soon as we approached the inlet we perceived the coast to be inhabited, and three canoes came off to the ship, at the place where we were first becalmed, in one of which were two men, in another six, and in the other ten. Advancing pretty near us, a person stood up in one of the two last, and spoke for a considerable time, inviting us, as we supposed by his gestures, to go ashore; and at the same time continued strewing handfuls of feathers towards us. Some of his companions also threw a red powder in the same manner.

The person who was the orator upon this occasion was clothed with the skin of some animal, and

held something in each hand which rattled as he shook it. At length, grown weary with his repeated exhortations, of which we could not comprehend a word, he became quiet; and the others, in their turn, had something to say to us; but their speeches were neither so long nor so vehement as that of the other. The hair of two or three of these people was strewed over with small white feathers, and that of others with large ones, stuck into different parts.

The tumultuous noise having ceased, they lay at a small distance from the ship, conversing together with much ease and composure, without showing the least distrust or surprise. Some of them rose occasionally, and said something aloud, after the manner of their first harangues, and one in particular sung a most agreeable air, accompanied with a great degree of melody and softness, the word *baela* being frequently repeated as the burden of the song.

A breeze springing up soon after, brought us closer to the shore, when the canoes began to visit us in great numbers, having had, at one time, no less than thirty-two of them about the ship, containing from three to seven or eight persons each, and of both sexes. Several of them also stood up and spake aloud, using the same gestures as our first visitors. One canoe particularly attracted our observation, by a peculiar head, which had a bird's eye, and an enormous large beak painted on it. The person who was in it, and who appeared to be a chief, was equally remarkable for his singular appearance, having a large quantity of feathers hanging from his head, and being painted or smeared in

a very
a carved
with wh
mention
ränge,
sive gest
able tha
intention
to come
to part
whateve
more so
ticles of
to the v

We v
anchoring
ten or a
Resolut
we flatter
situate a
and forg
enced in
winds a
rival up

Havi
our ship
inhabite
no time
commod
during o
service,
the com
small bo
ficulty

a very extraordinary manner. In his hand he had a carved bird of wood, of the size of a pigeon, with which he often rattled, like the person before mentioned, and was equally vociferous in his language, which was accompanied with many expressive gestures. Though our visitors were so peaceable that they could not be suspected of any hostile intention, not any of them could be prevailed upon to come on board. They were very ready, however, to part with any thing they had, and received whatever we offered them in exchange; but were more solicitous after iron than any of our other articles of commerce; appearing to be no strangers to the use of that valuable metal.

We were followed by many of the canoes to our anchoring place; and a group, consisting of about ten or a dozen of them, continued alongside the Resolution the greatest part of the night. Hence we flattered ourselves, that we were so comfortably situate as to be able to get all our wants supplied, and forget the delays and hardships we had experienced in almost a constant succession of adverse winds and tempestuous weather, ever since our arrival upon this coast.

Having happily found such excellent shelter for our ships, in an inlet whose coasts appeared to be inhabited by an inoffensive race of people, we lost no time, after coming to anchor, in searching for a commodious harbour, where we might be stationed during our continuance in the Sound. Upon this service, captain Cook sent three armed boats, under the command of Mr King, and went himself, in a small boat, on the same business. He had no difficulty in finding what he wanted; for on the

northwest of the arm, and at a small distance from the ships, he found a convenient snug cove, perfectly adapted to our purpose. Mr King was also successful, and found a still better harbour, lying on the northwest side of the land. It would, however, have required more time to take the ships thither than to the cove where the captain had been, therefore his choice was determined in favour of the latter situation. But, apprehending that we could not transport our ships to it, and moor them properly, before night had overtaken us, he thought it prudent to continue where we were till the next morning.

Plenty of canoes, filled with the inhabitants, were about the ships the whole day; and a reciprocal trade was commenced between us, which was conducted with the strictest harmony and integrity on both sides. Their articles of commerce were the skins of various animals; such as bears, sea-otters, wolves, foxes, deer, racoons, martins, and pole-cats. They also produced garments made of skins; and another kind of clothing, fabricated from the bark of a tree, or a plant resembling hemp. Besides these articles, they had bows, arrows, and spears; fish-hooks, and various kinds of instruments; wooden vizors, representing horrid figures; a sort of woollen stuff; carved work; beads, and red ochre: also several little ornaments of thin brass and iron, resembling a horse shoe, which they wear pendent at their noses. They had likewise several pieces of iron fixed to handles, somewhat resembling chisels. From their being in possession of these metals, it was natural for us to infer, that they must either have been visited before by persons of some

civilized
their ov
with th

Amo
posed t
skulls,
on ther
feeding
marks
this cir
horrid
tised h
South-
brough
nails, l
tin, or
clinatio
cloth.

The
into th
found,
the gr
bottom
well as
the sh
bottom
now b
carpen
and to
cover.

In
the ne
native
above

civilized nation, or had connections with those on their own continent, who had some communication with them.

Among all the articles, however, which they exposed to sale, the most extraordinary were human skulls, and hands, with some of the flesh remaining on them, which they acknowledged they had been feeding on; and some of them indeed bore evident marks of their having been upon the fire. From this circumstance, it was but too apparent, that the horrid practice of devouring their enemies is practised here, as much as at New-Zealand, and other South-Sea islands. For the various articles they brought they received in exchange, knives, chissels, nails, looking-glasses, buttons, pieces of iron and tin, or any kind of metal. They had not much inclination for glass beads, and rejected every kind of cloth.

The next day was employed in hauling the ships into the cove, where they were moored. We found, on heaving up the anchor, notwithstanding the great depth of water, that rocks were at the bottom. These had greatly injured the cable, as well as the hawsers that were carried out to warp the ship into the cove; consequently the whole bottom was strewed with rocks. The ship was now become very leaky in her upper works; the carpenters were therefore ordered to caulk her, and to repair any other defects they might discover.

In the course of this day (the 31st of March) the news of our arrival brought vast numbers of the natives about our ships. At one time we counted above a hundred canoes, each of which, on an ave-

rage, had five people on board, few containing less than three, many having seven, eight, or nine, and one was manned with seventeen. Many of these were new visitors, which we discovered by their orations and ceremonies when they approached the ships.

If they, at first, had apprehended that we meant to be hostile, their fears were now removed; for they ventured on board the ships, and mixed with our people with the utmost freedom and familiarity. We discovered however, by this intercourse, that they were as fond of pilfering as any we had met with during our voyage: and they were much more mischievous than any of the other thieves we had found; for, having sharp instruments in their possession, they could, the instant that our backs were turned, cut a hook from a tackle, or a piece of iron from a rope.

Besides other articles, we lost several hooks in this manner, one of which weighed between twenty and thirty pounds. They stripped our boats of every morsel of iron that was worth taking away, though some of our men were always left in them as a guard. They were, indeed, so dexterous in effecting their purposes, that one fellow would contrive to amuse our people at one end of the boat, while another was forcing off the iron-work at the other. If an article that had been stolen was immediately missed, the thief was easily detected, as they were fond of impeaching each other. But the prize was always reluctantly given up by the guilty person; and sometimes compulsive means were obliged to be exercised for that purpose.

Our
the ne
observ
rock on
solution
wood,

plenty
brewing
to mak
fore-ma
was ot

We
of the
new fa
ducing
paddle
round
ing up
rather

Son
with a
nance,
of a s
Havin
ship, t
to tra
first e
compa
harmc
was t

We
April
emplo
ter, o

Our ships being safely moored, we proceeded, the next day, to other necessary business. The observatories were taken ashore, and placed upon a rock on one side of the cove, not far from the Resolution. A party of men was ordered to cut wood, and clear a place for watering. Having plenty of pine-trees here, others were employed in brewing spruce-beer. The forge was also erected to make the necessary iron-work for repairing the fore-mast, which had one of the ribs defective, and was otherwise incomplete.

We were daily visited by a considerable number of the natives, and, among them, we frequently saw new faces. They had a singular mode of introducing themselves on their first appearance. They paddled, with their utmost strength and activity, round both the ships; a chief, all this time, standing up with a spear in his hand, and speaking, or rather bawling, most vociferously.

Sometimes the face of this orator was covered with a mask, representing either a human countenance, or that of some other animal; and, instead of a spear, he had a kind of a rattle in his hand. Having made this ceremonious circuit round the ship, they would come along-side, and then begin to traffic with us. Frequently, indeed, they would first entertain us with a song, in which their whole company joined, and produced a very agreeable harmony. During these visits, our principal care was to guard against their thievery.

We had, however, in the morning of the 4th of April, a very serious alarm. Our party, who were employed on shore in cutting wood and filling water, observed, that the natives, in all quarters, were

arming themselves in the best manner they were able, and that those who had not proper weapons were collecting sticks and stones. Hearing this, we thought it necessary to arm also; but, being resolved to act upon the defensive, the commodore ordered all our workmen to repair to the rock, on which our observatories had been placed, leaving the supposed enemy in possession of the ground where they had assembled, which was within about a hundred yards of the Resolution's stern.

Our danger, however, was only imaginary; for these hostile preparations were directed against a body of their own countrymen, who were advancing to attack them. Our friends of the Sound, perceiving our apprehensions, exerted their best endeavours to convince us that this was really the case. We saw they had people looking out on both sides of the cove, and canoes were frequently dispatched between them and the main body. The adverse party, on board of about a dozen large canoes, at length drew up in a line of battle, off the south point of the cove, a negotiation for the restoration of peace having commenced. In conducting the treaty, several people in canoes passed between the two parties, and some debates ensued. At length the matter in dispute appeared to be adjusted; but the strangers were not permitted to approach the ships, nor to have any intercourse or dealings with us.

We were probably the occasion of the quarrel; the strangers, perhaps, insisting on having a right of sharing in the advantages of a trade with us; and our first friends resolving to engross us entirely to themselves. We were convinced of this on many

other o
in the
submit
of ever
any res

In t
next da
not bei
was or
mining
both cl
that th
We we
to supp

Thu
was to
was ne
quire n
ever, f
covered
as to h
requite
there
adapte
were i
mornin
mast o
were s
standin
dore e
mast v
riggin
proved

other occasions; nay, even among those who lived in the Sound, the weaker were often obliged to submit to the stronger party, and were plundered of every thing, without even attempting to make any resistance.

In the afternoon we resumed our work, and the next day rigged the fore-mast; the head of which not being large enough for the cap, the carpenter was ordered to fill up the vacant space. In examining the state of the mast-head for this purpose, both cheeks were discovered to be rotten, insomuch that there was not a possibility of repairing them. We were therefore obliged to get the mast out, and to supply it with new ones.

Thus, when almost ready for sea, all our work was to be done over again, and an additional repair was necessary to be undertaken, which would require much time to be completed. It was, however, fortunate that these defects should be discovered when we were so commodiously situate, as to be able to procure the materials that were requisite. For, in the cove where our ships lay, there were some small seasoned trees, perfectly adapted for our purpose; and two new cheeks were immediately made from one of these. In the morning of the 7th of April, having got the fore-mast out, we hauled it ashore, and the carpenters were set to work upon it. Some of our lower standing rigging being much decayed, the commodore embraced the opportunity, while the fore-mast was repairing, of ordering a new set of main-rigging to be fitted, and the fore-rigging to be improved.

From our putting into the Sound, till the 7th of April, the weather had been remarkably fine; but, in the morning of the 8th, the wind blew fresh at southeast, accompanied with hazy weather and rain; it increased in the afternoon, and in the evening it blew extremely hard. It came in heavy squalls right into the cove, from over the high land on the opposite shore; and, though the ships were well moored, they were in a dangerous situation.

Though these tempestuous blasts succeeded each other quickly, they were of short duration, and, in the intervals, we had a perfect calm. Another misfortune now befel us. On board the *Resolution*, the mizen was the only mast that now remained rigged, with its top-mast up. The former was too defective to support the latter during these squalls, and gave way at the head under the rigging. The gale abated about eight o'clock; but the rain continued, almost without intermission, for several days; during which time, a tent was erected over the fore-mast, that the carpenters might be enabled to proceed in their labours with some degree of convenience.

The natives were not discouraged by this bad weather from making us daily visits; and, in our situation, such visits were very acceptable to us. They frequently brought us a supply of fish, when we were unable to catch any with a hook and line, and we had not a convenient place to draw a net. The fish they brought us were small cod, and a small kind of bream, or sardine. On the 11th, the main-rigging was fixed and got over head, notwithstanding the rainy weather; and, the next

day, we
which v
slings.

We r
of native
in gener
friends.
cabin, b
their att
with ind
ed a cer
party of
down a
The day
the carp
The win
and blew
eight o'
abated,

The f
it along
could no
expediti
employe
16th, w
it, they
were at
ed, to s
fore bec
of the
employe
Duri
were ab
surprise

day, we took down the mizen-mast, the head of which was so rotten, that it dropped off in the slings.

We received a visit in the evening from a tribe of natives whom we had not seen before ; and who, in general, made a better appearance than our old friends. The commodore conducted them into the cabin, but there was not an object that demanded their attention ; all our novelties were looked on with indifference, except by a very few, who showed a certain degree of curiosity. The next day, a party of our men went into the woods, and cut down a tree, of which a mizen-mast was to be made. The day after, it was conveyed to the place where the carpenters were at work upon the fore-mast. The wind, in the evening, veered to the southeast, and blew a very hard gale, attended with rain, till eight o'clock the next morning ; at which time it abated, and veered again to the west.

The fore-mast being now finished, we hauled it along-side ; but, on account of the bad weather, could not get it in till the afternoon. We were expeditious in rigging it, while the carpenters were employed on the mizen-mast on shore. On the 16th, when they had made considerable progress in it, they discovered that the tree on which they were at work was wounded, owing, it was imagined, to some accident in cutting it down. It therefore became necessary to procure another tree out of the woods, on which occasion, all hands were employed about half a day.

During these operations, many of the natives were about the ships, gazing on with an expressive surprise, which, from their general inattention,

we did not expect. A party of strangers, in seven or eight canoes, came into the cove on the 18th, and, after looking at us for some time, retired. We apprehended that our old friends, who, at this time, were more numerous about us than our new visitors, would not suffer them to have any dealings with us. It was evident, indeed, that the neighbouring inhabitants engrossed us entirely to themselves; and that they carried on a traffic with more distant tribes in those articles they had received from us: for they frequently disappeared for four or five days together, and returned with fresh cargoes of curiosities and skins.

Such of the natives as visited us daily were the most beneficial to us; for, after disposing of their trifles, they employed themselves in fishing, and we always partook of what they caught. We also procured from them a considerable quantity of good animal oil, which they brought to us in bladders. Some, indeed, attempted to cheat us, by mixing water with the oil; and, once or twice, they so far imposed upon us as to fill their bladders with water only. But, it was better for us to wink at these impositions, than suffer them to produce a quarrel; for our articles of traffic chiefly consisted of trifles, and we found it difficult to produce a constant supply even of these. Beads, and such like toys, of which we had some remaining, were not highly estimated. Metal was principally demanded by our visitors; and brass had now supplanted iron, being sought after with such eagerness, that, before we left the Sound, hardly a bit of it was to be found in the ships, except what constituted a part of our necessary instruments. Suits of clothes were strip-

ped of t
kettles,
so that
greater v
had visit

Having
the 19th
tunity of
of fixing
being re
morning
the west
before it
four fath

The i
rous, ma
ger to,
pressing
families
politely
friends v
vility an

Wom
tations,
ready m
like the
busy in
have see
several
perform
done by
small r
they ar
room f

ped of their buttons; bureaus of their furniture; kettles, canisters, and candlesticks, all went to rack; so that our American friends procured from us a greater variety of things than any other nation we had visited.

Having had a fortnight's bad weather, Sunday the 19th being a fair day, we embraced the opportunity of getting up the top-masts and yards, and of fixing up the rigging. Most of our heavy work being now finished, the commodore set out the next morning to survey the Sound; and going first to the west point, he discovered a large village, and before it a very snug harbour, with from nine to four fathoms water.

The inhabitants of this village, who were numerous, many of whom the commodore was no stranger to, received him with great courtesy, every one pressing him to enter his apartment; for several families have habitations under the same roof. He politely accepted the invitations, and the hospitable friends whom he visited testified every mark of civility and respect.

Women were employed, in many of these habitations, in making dresses of the bark or plant already mentioned, and executed their business much like the inhabitants of New-Zealand. Others were busy in opening sardines; large shoals of which we have seen brought on shore, and measured out to several people, who carried them home, where they performed the operation of curing them, which is done by smoke-drying them. They are hung upon small rods, at first, about a foot over the fire; they are then removed higher and higher, to make room for others. When dried, they are closely

packed in bales, and the bales covered with mats. Thus they are preserved till they are wanted; and they are not unpleasart food. They also cure cod and other large fish in the same manner; but these are sometimes dried in the open air.

Leaving this village, the commodore proceeded up the west side of the Sound. For near three miles he saw several small islands, so situate as to form some convenient harbours, the depths being from thirty to seven fathoms. About two leagues within the Sound, on the same side, an arm runs in the direction of north northwest, and another in the same direction about two miles further.

About a mile above the second arm he found the ruins of a village. The framings of the houses remained standing, but the boards or roofs were taken away. Behind this deserted village is a small plain, covered with the largest pine-trees that the commodore had ever seen. This was indeed singular, as most of the elevated ground on this side of the Sound appeared rather naked.

Passing from this place to the east side of the Sound, captain Cook found what he had before imagined, that it was an island under which the ships lay; and that many smaller ones lay scattered on the west side of it. Upon the main-land, opposite the north end of our island, the commodore observed a village, and landed there; but he was not so politely received by the inhabitants, as by those of the other village he had visited. This cold reception was occasioned by one surly chief, who would not suffer the commodore to enter their houses, but followed him wherever he went; making expressive signs that he was impatient for him to be

gone.
sooth h
refuse t
viour.
the inh
expedit
assembl
to the
Evening
for the
Whe
that, in
large ca
whom o
had con
them s
which t
most re
table-sp
which
They v
visitors,
On t
ged, an
fore-top
nied aw
eight o
teen ca
and wh
they d
half an
from th
fraid to

gone. Captain Cook attempted, but in vain, to soothe him with presents; for, though he did not refuse them, he continued the same kind of behaviour. But, notwithstanding this treatment from the inhospitable chief, some of the young women expeditiously apparelled themselves in their best, assembled in a body, and gave us a hearty welcome to the village by joining in an agreeable song. Evening now drawing on, captain Cook proceeded for the ships round the north end of the island.

When he returned on board, he was informed that, in his absence, some strangers, in two or three large canoes, had made a visit to the ships; from whom our people understood, by signs, that they had come from the southeast. They brought with them several garments, skins, and other articles, which they bartered for some of ours. But the most remarkable circumstance was, that two silver table-spoons were purchased of them by our people, which appeared to be of Spanish manufacture. They were worn round the neck of one of these visitors, by way of ornament.

On the 21st, the mizen-mast was got in and rigged, and the carpenters ordered to make a new fore-top-mast, to replace that which had been carried away. A number of strangers visited us about eight o'clock the next morning, in twelve or thirteen canoes. They came from the southward; and when they had turned the point of the cove, they drew up in a body, where they remained about half an hour, at the distance of two hundred yards from the ships. We imagined, at first, they were afraid to approach; but in this we were mistaken,

for they were only making preparations for an introductory ceremony.

At length they advanced towards the ships, all standing up in their canoes, and began to sing. Some of their songs were slow and solemn, in which they were joined by the whole body; others were in quicker time, and their notes were regularly accompanied by the motions of their hands, their paddles beating in concert on the sides of the canoes; and they, at the same time, exhibited the most expressive gestures. They remained silent, for a few seconds, after the conclusion of each song, and then began again, frequently pronouncing the word *hoee* as a kind of chorus.

Having thus favoured us with a specimen of their music, with which we were highly entertained for half an hour, they came nearer the ships and bartered with us. We now perceived that some of our old friends from the Sound were among them, who managed for the strangers in the traffic between us and them.

These visitors being gone, the captains Cook and Clerke went with two boats to the village at the west point, where captain Cook had been two days before, and had observed that plenty of grass was to be had near it; and it was necessary to get a supply of this for the few remaining goats and sheep which were still on board. They experienced the same welcome reception that captain Cook had met with before; and, soon after they were ashore, the commodore ordered some of his people to begin cutting; not imagining that the natives would object to our furnishing ourselves with what could not be of any use to them, though essentially

necessar
taken,
grass,
them to
fied tha

The
houses,
to the
ants at
the pre
for it,
purcha
wherev
for he
prietor
so that
of gras
them
sently
convinc
ceased
to cut
pleased

It is
with a
sessed
sive pr
inhabit
people
carried
when t
have co
differen
claims.

necessary for us. In this, however, he was mistaken, for as soon as our men began cutting the grass, some of the inhabitants would not suffer them to proceed, saying, "*makook*," which signified that we must buy it first.

The commodore, at this time, was in one of the houses, but, hearing of this, he repaired immediately to the field, where he found about a dozen claimants at different parts of the grass that grew on the premises. The commodore treated with them for it, and, having complied with the terms of his purchase, thought we had now full liberty to cut wherever we pleased. Here he was again mistaken, for he had so liberally paid the first pretended proprietors, that fresh demands were made from others; so that it almost appeared that every single blade of grass had a separate owner; and so many of them were to be satisfied, that his pockets presently became empty. When they were, however, convinced that he had nothing more to give, they ceased to be importunate, and we were permitted to cut where we pleased, and as much as we pleased.

It is worthy of observation, that we never met with any uncivilized nation, or tribe, who possessed such strict notions of their having an exclusive property in the produce of their country as the inhabitants of this sound. They even wanted our people to pay for the wood and water that were carried on board. Had captain Cook been present when these demands were made, he would doubtless have complied with them; but our workmen thought differently, and paid little or no attention to such claims. The natives thinking we were determined

to pay nothing, at length ceased to apply. But they frequently took occasion to remind us, that their esteem for us had induced them to make us a present of wood and water.

While they remained at this village, Mr Webber, who attended the two captains thither, made a drawing of every thing that was thought curious, both within doors and without. This he was well enabled to do, as he had an excellent opportunity of inspecting narrowly the constructions of their buildings, their furniture, and implements or utensils, as well as the most striking peculiarities of the modes of living of the inhabitants. Having at length completed all their operations at this village, the natives and the two captains took a friendly leave of each other, and we returned to the ships in the afternoon. The 23d, 24th, and 25th of April were employed in preparing to put to sea: the sails were bent, the observatories and other articles removed from the shore, and both ships were put into a proper condition for sailing.

Thus prepared, we intended to have put to sea on the morning of the 26th, but having both wind and tide against us, we were under a necessity of waiting till noon, when a calm succeeded the south-west wind, and the tide at the same time turning in our favour, we towed the ships out of the cove. We had variable airs and calms till about four in the afternoon, when a breeze sprung up, attended with thick hazy weather.

The mercury in the barometer sunk uncommonly low, and we had every appearance of an approaching storm from the southward. In this situation captain Cook hesitated for a short time, as night

was the
mediate
anxiety
of losin
the Sou
than th
to put t

We
most o
others
had pa
was am
modore
small
beaver-
sioned
which
to the
then w

Stru
wishing
captain
broad
peared
portu
men,
induce
skins.

Kin
by th
but he
ed it
of H
longit

was then approaching, whether he should sail immediately, or stay till the next morning. But his anxiety to proceed upon the voyage, and the fear of losing so good an opportunity of getting out of the Sound, operated more strongly upon his mind than the apprehension of danger, and he resolved to put to sea.

We were attended by the natives till we were almost out of the Sound, some in their canoes, and others on board the ships. One of the chiefs, who had particularly attached himself to the commodore, was among the last who parted from us. The commodore, a little time before he went, made him a small present, for which he received in return a beaver-skin of a much superior value. This occasioned him to make some addition to his present, which pleased the chief so highly, that he presented to the commodore the beaver-skin cloak which he then wore, and of which he was particularly fond.

Struck with this instance of generosity, and wishing him not to be a sufferer by his gratitude, captain Cook insisted upon his acceptance of a new broad sword, with a brass hilt, with which he appeared greatly delighted. We were earnestly importuned by the chief, and many of his countrymen, to pay them another visit, who, by way of inducement, promised to procure a large stock of skins.

King George's Sound was the appellation given by the commodore to this inlet on our first arrival; but he was afterwards informed that the natives called it Nootka. The entrance is in the east corner of Hope Bay: its latitude is $49^{\circ} 33'$ north, and its longitude $233^{\circ} 12'$ east. The east coast of that

bay is covered by a chains of sunken rocks; and near the Sound are some islands and rocks above water. We enter the Sound between two rocky points, lying east-southeast and west-northwest from each other, distant about four miles. The Sound widens within these points, and extends in to the northward at least four leagues.

A number of islands of various sizes appear in the middle of the Sound. The depth of water, not only in the middle of the Sound, but also close to some parts of its shore, is from forty-seven to ninety fathoms, or more. Within its circuit the harbours and anchoring-places are numerous. The cove where our ships anchored is on the east side of the Sound, and also on the east of the largest island. It is indeed covered from the sea, which is its principal recommendation, for it is exposed to the southeast wind, which sometimes blows with great violence, and makes great devastation, as was but too apparent in many places.

Upon the sea coast the land is tolerably high and level; but within the Sound it rises into steep hills, which have an uniform appearance, ending in roundish tops, with sharp ridges on the sides. Many of these hills are high, and others are covered to their tops with the thickest woods. Some bare spots are to be seen on the sides of some of the hills, but they are not numerous, though they sufficiently show the general rocky disposition of these hills. They have indeed no soil upon them, except what has been produced from rotten mosses and trees, of the depth of about two feet. Their foundations are indeed nothing more than stupendous rocks, which are of a grey or whitish cast when exposed

to the
grey
this

Sound

Du

with t

off the

wind v

the sou

climat

the ea

of lati

low gr

ceeded

upwar

The

compo

and tw

are in

semble

guisne

green

here w

this ea

ty of

Ab

saw so

and g

There

of sov

flower

with

young

cresse

to the weather; but when broken are of a bluish grey colour. The rocky shores consist entirely of this: and the beaches of the little coves in the Sound are composed of fragments of it.

During our stay the weather nearly corresponded with that which we had experienced when we were off the coast. We had fine clear weather, if the wind was between north and west; but if more to the southward, hazy, accompanied with rain. The climate appears to be infinitely milder than that on the east coast of America, under the same parallel of latitude. We perceived no frost in any of the low ground; but, on the contrary, vegetation proceeded very briskly, for we saw grass at this time upwards of a foot long.

The trees of which the woods are principally composed are the Canadian pine, white cypress, and two or three other sorts of pine. The two first are in the greatest abundance, and at a distance resemble each other, though they are easily distinguished on a near view, the cypress being of a paler green than the other. In general, the trees grow here with great vigour, and are of a large size. At this early season of the year we saw but little variety of other vegetable productions.

About the rocks and borders of the woods we saw some strawberry plants, and raspberry, currant, and gooseberry bushes, all in a flourishing state. There were also a few black alder-trees, a species of sow-thistle, some crow's foot with a fine crimson flower, and two sorts of *anthericum*. We also met with some wild rose-bushes, just budding, some young leeks, a small sort of grass, and some water-cresses, besides a great abundance of *andromeda*.

Within the woods are two sorts of underwood shrubs, unknown to us, and some mosses and ferns.

The season of the year did not permit us to acquire much knowledge of the vegetables of this country, and it was impossible, from our situation, to learn much about its animals. The want of water induced us to enter the Sound at first; and the accidents that happened there, though they obliged us to stay longer than we intended, were unfavourable to our acquiring any knowledge of this kind. It was absolutely necessary that every person should be employed in forwarding the necessary business of the ships; which was the principal object, as the season was advancing, and the success of the voyage depended upon their diligence in performing their several tasks. Excursions of any kind were, therefore, never attempted.

Lying in a cove, on an island, all the animals that we saw alive, were two or three racoons, martins, and squirrels; some of our people, indeed, who landed on the continent, on the southeast side of the Sound, saw the print of a bear's feet, not far from the shore. The only account, therefore, that we can furnish of the quadrupeds is taken from the skins which we purchased of the inhabitants; and these were sometimes so mutilated in the heads, tails, and paws, that we could not even guess to what animals they belonged; though others were either so perfect, or so well known, that they did not admit of a doubt about them. The most common among them were bears, deer, foxes, and wolves. Bear-skins were very plentiful, generally

of a shi
deer-ski
belong
fallow-d
the nam
different
rous, an
being y
of a re
others d

Whe
of a do
wolf in
entire w
common
lighter
in this
its hair
is entire

of the t
are com
and has
of the b

We
animals
others
tinguis
eik or
to be t
have n
Nor ha
rats, t
to squ
ships.

of a shining black colour, but not very large. The deer-skins were not so plentiful, and appeared to belong to what the historians of Carolina call the fallow-deer; though Mr Pennant distinguishes it by the name of Virginian deer, and thinks it quite a different species from ours. Their foxes are numerous, and of several varieties; the skins of some being yellow, with a black tip at the tail; others of a reddish yellow, intermixed with black; and others of an ash colour, also intermixed with black.

When the skins were so mutilated as to admit of a doubt, our people applied the name of fox or wolf indiscriminately. At length we met with an entire wolf's skin, and it was grey. Here is the common martin, the pine martin, and another of a lighter brown colour. The ermine is also found in this country, but is small, and not very common; its hair is not remarkably fine, though the animal is entirely white, except about an inch at the tip of the tail. The racoons and squirrels are such as are common, but the latter is not so large as ours, and has a rusty colour extending the whole length of the back.

We were sufficiently clear with regard to the animals already mentioned, but there were two others that we could not, with any certainty, distinguish. One of them we concluded to be the elk or mouse deer; and the other was conjectured to be the wild cat or *lynx*. Hogs, dogs, and goats, have not yet made their appearance in this place. Nor have the natives any knowledge of our brown rats, to which they applied the name they give to squirrels, when they saw them on board the ships.



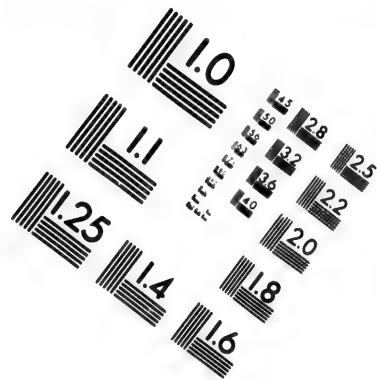
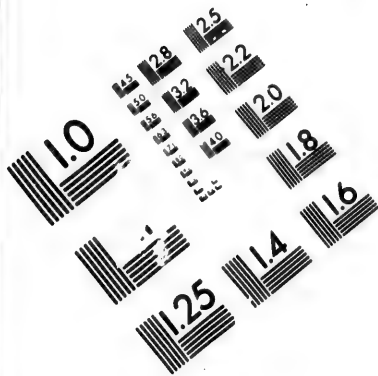
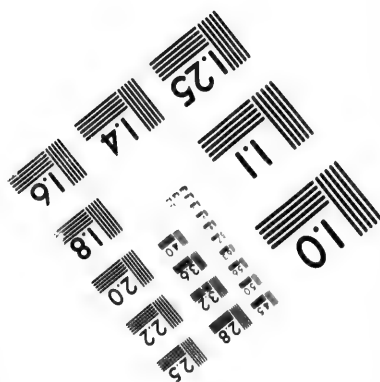
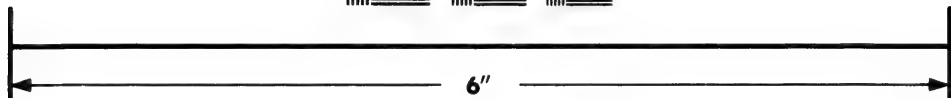
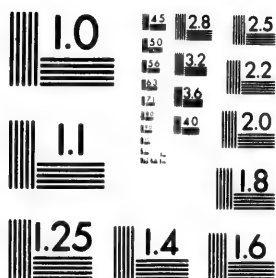


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503



The sea animals near the coast, are whales, porpoises, and seals; the latter, from the skins we saw, seeming to be of the common sort. The porpoise is the *Phocena*. Though the sea-otter is amphibious, we shall consider him as belonging to this class, as living principally in the water. We doubted, for some time, whether the skins, which the natives sold us for otter-skins, really belonged to that animal; but, a short time before our departure, a whole one, just killed, was purchased from some strangers, of which Mr Webber made a drawing. It was young, weighing only twenty-five pounds; was of a glossy black colour, but many of the hairs being tipped with white, gave it, at first sight, a greyish cast. The face, throat, and breast, were of a light brown, or yellowish white; and, in many of the skins, that colour extended the whole length of the belly. In each jaw it had six cutting teeth; two in the lower jaw being exceedingly small, and placed without, at the base of the two in the middle. In these respects it differs from those found by the Russians, and also in the outer toes of the hind feet not being skirted with a membrane. There also appeared a greater variety in colour than is mentioned by those who describe the Russian sea-otters. It is most probable, that these changes of colour naturally take place at the different gradations of life. The very young ones had brown coarse hair, with a little fur underneath; but those of the size of the animal just described, had a greater quantity of that substance. After they have attained their full growth, they lose the black colour, which is succeeded by a deep brown. At that period they have a greater quantity of fine

whales, porpoises we saw, the porpoise is amphibious to this. We doubt which the natives are attached to that departure, and from some drawing. We have pounds; any of the first sight, we feast, were; and, in the whole six cutting dingy small, two in the from those outer toes with a membrane variety in no describe visible; that place at the young ones underneath; described, &c. After they lose the deep brown. City of fine

fur, and very few long hairs. Some, which we supposed to be older, were of a chesnut brown; and we saw some few skins that were of a perfect yellow. The fur of these creatures is certainly finer than that of any other animal we know of; consequently the discovery of this part of North America, where so valuable an article of commerce is to be procured, ought certainly to be considered as a matter of some consequence.

Birds are far from being numerous here, and those that are to be seen are remarkably shy, owing, perhaps, to their being continually harassed by the natives, either to eat them, or become possessed of their feathers to be worn as ornaments. There are crows and ravens, not differing in the least from those in England: also a jay or magpie; the common wren, which is the only singing bird we heard; the Canadian thrush; the brown eagle, with a white head and tail; a small species of hawk; a heron, and the large-crested American king's-fisher. There are also some that have not yet been mentioned by those who have treated on natural history. The two first are a *species* of wood-peckers. One is somewhat smaller than a thrush, of a black colour on the back, having white spots on the wings; the head, neck, and breast, of a crimson colour, and the belly of a yellowish olive colour; whence it might, with propriety, be called the yellow-bellied wood-pecker. The other is larger and more elegant; the back of it is a dusky brown colour, richly waved with black; the belly has a reddish cast, with black spots; it has also a black spot on the breast, and the lower part of the wings and tail are of a scarlet colour, the upper part blackish.

A crimson streak runs on each side, from the angle of the mouth, a little down the neck. The third and fourth are, one of the finch kind, not larger than a linnet, of a dusky colour, black head and neck, and white bill; and a sand-piper, of a dusky brown colour, with a broad white band across the wings, of the size of a small pigeon. There are also humming birds, which differ, in some degree, from the numerous sorts already known of this delicate little animal.

The quebrantahuessos, shags, and gulls, were seen off the coast; and the two last were also frequent in the Sound. There are two sorts of wild ducks; one of which was black, with a white head; the other was white, and had a red bill, but of a larger size. Here are also the greater *lumme*, or diver, which are found in our northern countries. Some swans, too, were once or twice seen flying to the northward, but we are unacquainted with their haunts. On the shores we found another sand-piper, about the size of a lark, and not unlike burre; also a plover, very much resembling our common sea-lark.

'Though the variety of fish is not very great here, they are more plentiful in quantity than birds. The principal sorts are the common herring, which are very numerous, though not exceeding seven inches in length; a smaller sort, which though larger than the anchovy or sardine, is of the same kind; a silver-coloured bream, and another of a gold brown colour, with narrow blue stripes. It is most probable that the herrings and sardines come in large shoals, at stated seasons, as is usual with those kinds of fish. The two sorts of breams may be

reckoned next to these in quantity, and those which were full grown weighed about a pound. The other fish were scarce, and consisted of a brown kind of *sculpin*, such as are taken on the coast of Norway; another of a reddish cast; frost-fish, a large one, without scales, resembling the bull-head, and a small brownish cod with whitish spots; also a red fish, of nearly the same size, which some of our people had seen in the Straights of Magellan, and another somewhat like the hake. Considerable numbers of the fish called the *chimera*, or little sea-wolves, are met with here. Sharks also frequent the Sound, the teeth of which many natives had in their possession. The other marine animals are a small cruciated *medusa*, or blubber, star-fish, small crabs, and a large cuttle-fish.

About the rocks there is an abundance of large muscles, also sea-ears, and we often found shells of pretty large plain *chama*. Also some *trochi* of two species, a curious *murex*, rugged wilks, and a snail. Besides these, there are some plain cockles and limpets. Many of the muscles are a span long, in some of which there are large pearls, but they are disagreeable both in colour and shape. It is probable that there is red coral either in the Sound or on the coast, large branches of it having been seen in the canoes of the natives.

The only reptiles observed here were brown snakes, about two feet in length, having whitish stripes on the back and sides, and brownish water-lizards. The former are so perfectly harmless, that we have seen the natives carry them alive in their hands. The insect tribe seem to be more numerous. For though the season for their appearance

was only beginning, we saw several different sorts of butterflies, all of which common: we also found some humble bees, gooseberry-moths, a few beetles, two or three sorts of flies, and some musquitoes.

Though we found both iron and copper here, we did not imagine that either of them belonged to this place. We did not even see the ores of any metal, except a coarse red ochry substance, used by the natives in painting or staining themselves. This may, perhaps, contain a small quantity of iron; as may also a black and white pigment made use of for the same purpose.

Exclusive of the rock, which constitutes the shores and mountains, we saw, among the natives, some articles made of a hard black granite, which was neither very compact nor fine-grained; also a greyish whet-stone, the common oil-stone, and a black sort, little inferior to the hone-stone. The natives were seen to use the transparent leafy glimmer, and a brown leafy or martial sort. They had also pieces of rock crystal. The two first articles were probably to be obtained near the spot, as they had considerable quantities of them: but the latter, it may be supposed, came from a greater distance, or is extremely scarce, for our visitors would not part with it without a very valuable consideration.

The stature of the natives is, in general, below the common standard; but their persons are not proportionably slender, being usually pretty plump, though not muscular. Their soft fleshiness, however, seems never to swell into corpulence, and many of the older people are rather lean. Most of the natives have round full visages, which are sometimes broad, with high prominent cheeks. Above these

the fa
betwe
has w
head
the n
gular
white

So
small
does
that
roots
only
but a
upper
Their
they
strong
short
thing
limbs
other
ed, h
ward
casior
contin
Th
their

* I
writer
ver's
P. 39.

the face frequently appears fallen in, quite across between the temples; the nose flattens at its base, has wide nostrils, and a rounded point. The forehead is low, the eyes small, black, and languishing; the mouth round, the lips thick, and the teeth regular and well set, but not remarkable for their whiteness.

Some have no beards at all, and others only a small thin one upon the point of the chin. This does not arise from an original deficiency of hair on that part, but from their plucking it out by the roots; for those who do not destroy it have not only considerable beards on every part of the chin, but also whiskers, or mustachoes, running from the upper lip to to the lower jaw obliquely downward*. Their eyebrows are also scanty and narrow; but they have abundance of hair on the head, which is strong, black, straight, and lank. Their necks are short, and their arms are rather clumsy, having nothing of beauty or elegance in their formation. The limbs, in all of them, are small in proportion to the other parts; besides, they are crooked and ill-formed, having projecting ancles, and large feet awkwardly shaped. The latter defect seems to be occasioned, in a great measure, by their sitting so continually on their hams or knees.

Their colour cannot be properly ascertained, their bodies being incrustated with paint and nasti-

* It is a mistaken notion, though espoused by eminent writers, that American Indians have no beards. See *Carver's Travels*, p. 224, 225; *Marsden's History of Samatra*, p. 39, 40.

ness, though, when these have been carefully rubbed off, the skin was little inferior in whiteness to that of the Europeans, though of that palish cast which distinguishes the inhabitants of our southern nations. Some of them, when young, appear rather agreeable, when compared to the generality of the people, that period of life being attended with a peculiar degree of animation; but, after a certain age, the distinction is hardly observable, a remarkable sameness characterizes every countenance, dulness and want of expression being visibly pourtrayed in every visage. The women, in general, are of the same size, colour, and form, with the men; nor is it easy to distinguish them, as they possess no natural feminine delicacies. Nor was there a single one to be found, even among those who were in their prime, who had the least pretensions to beauty or comeliness.

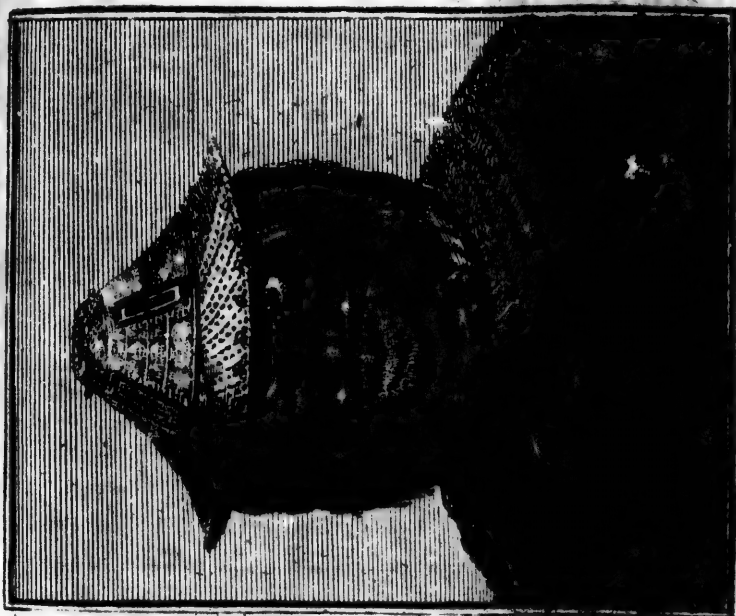
Their dress, in common, is a flaxen kind of mantle, ornamented with a narrow stripe of fur on the upper edge, and fringes at the lower edge. Passing under the left arm, it is tied over the right shoulder, leaving both arms perfectly free. Sometimes the mantle is fastened round the waist by a girdle of coarse matting. Over this is worn a small cloak of the same substance, reaching to the waist, also fringed at the bottom. They wear a cap like a truncated cone, or a flower-pot, made of very fine matting, ornamented with a round knob, or a bunch of leathern tassels, having a string passing under the chin to prevent its blowing off.

The above dress is common to both sexes, and the men often wear, over their other garments, the skin of some animal, as a bear, wolf, or sea-otter,

efully rub-
hiteness to
palish cast
ar southern
appear ra-
generality
g attended
ut, after a
servable, a
ry counte-
ing visibly
n, in gene-
form, with
n them, as
cies. Nor
ven among
d the least

n kind of
of fur on
wer edge.
r the right
e. Some-
waist by a
orn a small
the waist,
a cap like
e of very
knob, or a
g passing

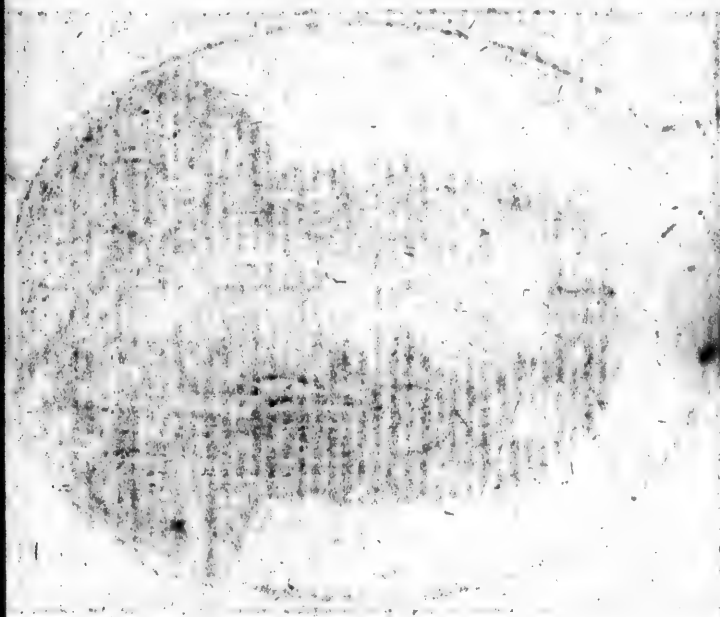
sexes, and
ments, the
sea-otter,



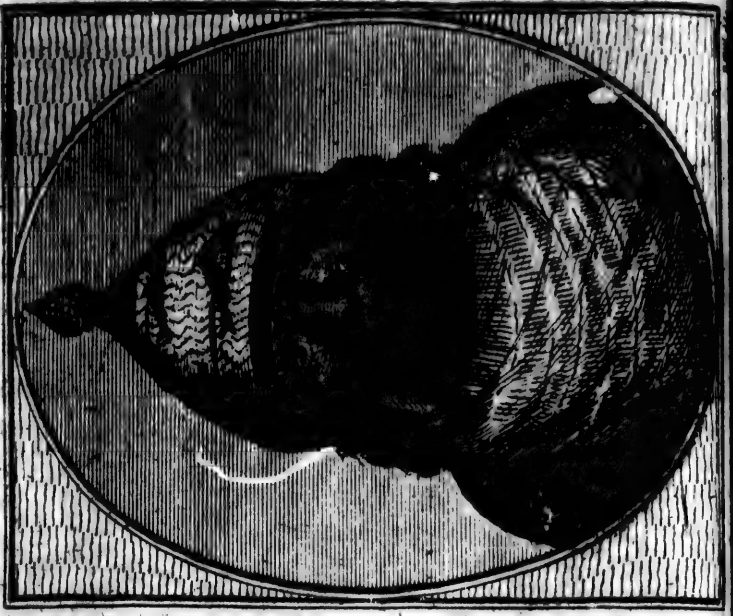
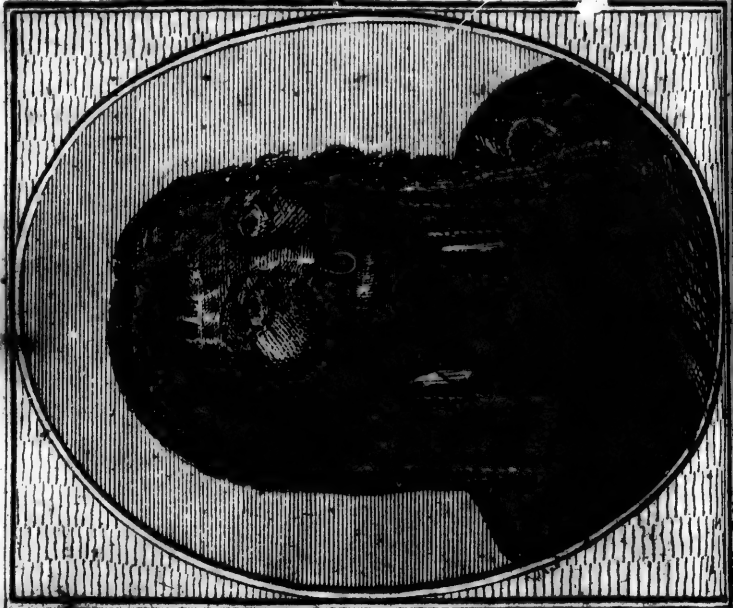
MAN AND WOMAN OF PRINCE WILLIAMS SOUND.

J. Walker del.

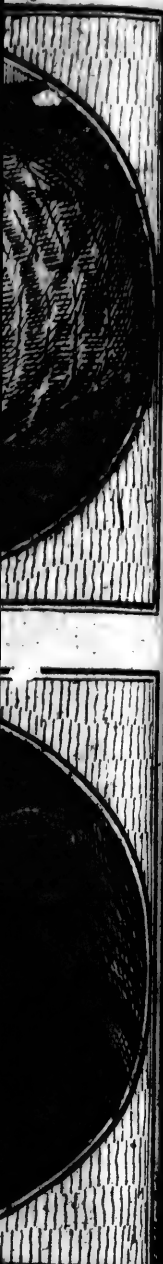




Cock's Toxopne



with
and e
a coa
ther,
but
hang
cap,
the h
T
kept
are c
red p
greas
appe
ed a
with
lines
verm
T
cove
men
red,
a gh
the
it to
lobe
ones
are
ther
piec
is al
it.
per
sho



with the hair outwards; sometimes tying it before, and sometimes behind, like a cloak. They throw a coarse mat about their shoulders in rainy weather, and they have woollen garments which are but little used. They generally wear their hair hanging loosely down, but those who have not a cap, tie it into a kind of bunch on the crown of the head.

Their dress is certainly convenient, and, were it kept clean, would not be inelegant; but, as they are continually rubbing their bodies over with a red paint, mixed with oil, their garments become greasy, and contract a rancid offensive smell. The appearance, indeed, of these people, is both wretched and filthy, and their heads and garments swarm with lice. So lost are they to every idea of cleanliness, that we frequently saw them pick off these vermin, and eat them with the greatest composure.

Their bodies, it has been observed, are always covered with red paint, but their faces are ornamented with a variety of colours, a black, a brighter red, or a white colour; the last of these gives them a ghastly horrible appearance. They likewise strew the brown martial *mica* over the paint, which causes it to glitter. Many of their ears are perforated in the lobe, where they make a large hole, and two smaller ones higher up on the outer edge. In these holes are hung bits of bone, quills fastened upon a leathern thong, shells, bunches of tassels, or thin pieces of copper. In some the *septum* of the nose is also perforated, and a piece of cord drawn through it. Others wear, at the same place, pieces of copper, brass, or iron, shaped somewhat like a horse-shoe, the narrow opening receiving the *septum*, so

that it may be pinched gently by the two points, and thus the ornament hangs over the upper lip. The rings of our buttons were eagerly purchased, and appropriated to this use. Their bracelets, which they wear about their wrists, are bunches of white bugle beads, or thongs with tassels, or a broad, black, horny shining substance. Round their ancles they frequently wear leathern thongs, or the sinews of animals curiously twisted.

Such are their common dresses and ornaments, but they have some that are used only on extraordinary occasions, such as going to war, and exhibiting themselves to strangers in ceremonial visits. Amongst these are the skins of wolves, or bears, tied on like their other garments, but edged with broad borders of fur, ingeniously ornamented with various figures. These are occasionally worn separately, or over their common clothing. The most usual head-dress, on these occasions, is a quantity of withe, wrapped about the head, with large feathers, particularly those of eagles, stuck in it; or it is entirely covered with small white feathers. At the same time the face is variously painted, the upper and lower parts being of opposite colours, and the strokes having the appearance of fresh gashes; or it is besmeared with a kind of fat, or tallow, mixed with paint, formed into a great variety of figures, somewhat like carved work.

The hair sometimes is separated into small parcels, and tied, at intervals, with thread; and others tie it together behind, after the English manner, and stick in it some branches of the *cupressus thyoides*. Thus equipped, they have a truly savage and ridiculous appearance, which is much heightened

when they assume their monstrous decorations. These consist of a great variety of wooden masks, applied to the face, forehead, or upper part of the head. Some of these visors resemble human faces, having hair, beards, and eyebrows; others represent the heads of birds, and many the heads of animals, such as deer, wolves, porpoises, and others.

These representations generally exceed the natural size, and they are frequently strewed with pieces of the foliaceous *mica*, which makes them glitter, and augments their deformity. Sometimes they even exceed this, and fix large pieces of carved work upon the head, projecting to a considerable distance, and resembling the prow of a canoe. So much do they delight in these disguises, that, for want of another mask, we saw one of them thrust his head into a tin kettle which he had bought from us.

Whether these extravagant masquerade ornaments are used on any religious occasion, or in any kind of diversion, or whether they are calculated to intimidate by their monstrous appearance, or as decoys when hunting animals, is uncertain; but, if travellers, in an ignorant and credulous age, when more than marvellous things were supposed to exist, had seen several people decorated in this manner, and had not approached so near them, as to be undeceived, they would have believed, and have endeavoured to make others believe, that a race of beings existed partaking of the nature of man and beast.

Among the people of Nootka, one of the dresses seems peculiarly adapted to war. It is a thick tanned leathern mantle, doubled, and appears to be

the skin of an elk, or buffalo. This is fastened on in the ordinary manner, and is so contrived as to cover the breast quite up to the throat, part of it, at the same time, falling down to their heels. This garment is sometimes very curiously painted, and is not only strong enough to resist arrows, but, as we understood from them, even spears cannot pierce it, so that it may be considered as their completest defensive armour. Sometimes they wear a sort of leathern cloak, over which are rows of the hoofs of deer, placed horizontally, and covered with quills, which, on their moving, make a loud rattling noise. Whether this part of their garb is intended to strike terror in war, or to be used on ceremonious occasions, is uncertain; but we saw one of their musical entertainments, which was conducted by a man habited in this manner, having a mask on, and shaking his rattle.

Though we cannot view these people without a kind of horror, when they are thus strangely apparelled, yet, when divested of these extravagant dresses, and beheld in their common habit, they have no appearances of ferocity in their countenances; but, as has been already observed, they seem to be of a quiet phlegmatic disposition; deficient in animation and vivacity to render themselves agreeable in society. They are rather reserved than loquacious; but their gravity seems constitutional, and not to arise from a conviction of its propriety, or to be the result of any particular mode of education; for, in their highest paroxysms of rage, they have not heat of language, or significance of gestures, to express it sufficiently.

The orations which they make on all public occasions are little more than short sentences, and sometimes only single words, forcibly repeated in one tone of voice, accompanied with a single gesture at every sentence; at the same time jerking their whole body a little forward, with their knees bending, and their arms hanging down by their sides.

From their exhibiting human skulls and bones to sale, there is little reason to doubt of their treating their enemies with a degree of brutal cruelty; but, as this circumstance rather marks a general agreement of character among almost every uncivilized tribe, in every age and country, they are not to be reproached with any charge of peculiar inhumanity. Their disposition, in this respect, we had not any reason to judge unfavourably of. They appear to be docile, courteous, and good-natured; but they are quick in resenting injuries, notwithstanding the predominancy of their phlegm; and, like all other passionate people, as quickly forgetting them.

These fits of passion never extended farther than the parties immediately concerned; the spectators never entering into the merits of the quarrel, whether it was with any of us, or among their own people; showing as much indifference as if they were wholly unacquainted with the whole transaction. It was common to see one of them rave and scold, while all his agitation did not in the least excite the attention of his countrymen, and when we could not discover the object of his displeasure. They never betray the least symptom of timidity upon these occasions, but seem resolutely determined to punish the insulter. With respect to our-

selves, they were under no apprehensions about our superiority; but if any difference arose, were as anxious to avenge the wrong, as if the cause of quarrel had been among themselves.

Their other passions appear to lie dormant, especially their curiosity. Few expressed any desire or inclination to see or examine things with which they were unacquainted; and which, to a curious observer, would have appeared astonishing. If they could procure the articles they knew and wanted, they were perfectly satisfied; regarding every thing else with great indifference. Nor did our persons, dress, and behaviour, (though so very different from their own) or even the size and construction of our ships, seem to command their admiration or attention.

Their indolence may, indeed, be a principal cause of this. But it must be admitted, that they are not wholly unsusceptible of the tender passions, which is evident from their being fond of music, and that too of the truly pathetic kind. Their songs are generally slow and solemn; but their music is less confined than that which is usually found in other rude nations; the variations being very numerous and expressive, and the melody powerfully soothing. Besides their concerts, sonnets were frequently sung by single performers, keeping time by striking the hand against the thigh. Though solemnity was predominant in their music, they sometimes entertained us in a gay and lively strain, and even with a degree of pleasantry and humour.

A rattle and a small whistle are the only instruments of music which we have seen among them. The rattle is used when they sing; but upon what

about our
were as
cause of

rmant, es-
any desire
with which
a curious
If they
d wanted,
very thing

ar persons,
different
instruction
iritation or

principal
that they
passions,
of music,
their songs
music is
found in
very nume-
powerfully
were fre-
ing time
Though
sic, they
ly strain,
numour.
ly instru-
ng them.
pon what

occasions the whistle is used, we never knew, un-
less it be when they assume the figures of particu-
lar animals, and endeavour to imitate their howl or
cry. We once saw one of these people dressed in
the skin of a wolf, with the head covering his own,
striving to imitate that animal, by making a squeak-
ing noise with a whistle he had in his mouth. The
rattles are generally in the shape of a bird, with
small pebbles in the belly, and the tail is the handle.
They have another sort, which resembles a child's
rattle.

Some of them displayed a disposition to knavery,
and, in trafficking with us, took away our goods
without making any return. But of this we had
few instances, and we had abundant reason to ap-
prove the fairness of their conduct. Their eager-
ness, however, to possess iron, brass, or any kind
of metal, was so great, that when an opportunity
presented itself, few of them could resist the temp-
tation to steal it. The natives of the South Sea
islands, as appears in many instances, would steal
any thing they could find, without considering
whether it was useful to them or not. The novelty
of the object was a sufficient inducement for them to
get possession of it by any means. They were
rather actuated by a childish curiosity, than by a
thievish disposition. The inhabitants of Nootka,
who made free with our property, are entitled to
no such apology. The appellation of thief is cer-
tainly due to them; for they knew that what they
pilfered from us might be converted to the pur-
poses of private utility; and, according to their
estimation of things, was really valuable. Luckily
for us they set no value upon any of our articles

except the metals. Linens, and many other things, were secure from their depredations; and we could safely leave them hanging out all night ashore, without being watched. The principle which prompted these people to pilfer from us, would probably operate in their intercourse with each other. We had, indeed, abundant reason to believe that stealing is very common amongst them, and frequently produces quarrels, of which we saw more instances than one.

The only inhabited parts of the Sound seem to be the two villages already mentioned. A pretty exact computation of the number of inhabitants of both might be made from the canoes that visited our ships the second day after our arrival. They consisted of about a hundred, which, upon an average, contained at least five persons each. But, as there were very few women, old men, children, or youths then among them, we may reasonably suppose, that the number of the inhabitants of the two villages could not be less than four times the number of our visitors; being two thousand in the whole.

The village which is situate at the entrance of the Sound, stands on the side of a pretty steep ascent, extending from the beach to the wood. The houses consist of three ranges or rows, placed at almost equal distances behind each other, the front row being the largest; and, there are a few straggling houses at each end. These rows are intersected by narrow paths or lanes, at irregular distances, passing upward; but those between the houses are considerably broader. Though this general disposition has some appearance of regularity, there is

other things,
and we could
shore, with-
ich prompt-
uld probably
other. We
re that steal-
d frequently
ore instances

und seem to
. A pretty
nhabitants of
that visited
ival. They
upon an ave-
each. But,
men, child-
may reason-
nhabitants of
four times
thousand in

entrance of
steep ascent,
The houses
ed at almost
e front row
w straggling
ntersected by
stances, pas-
e houses are
eneral dispo-
rity, there is

none in the respective houses; for every division made by the paths, may either be considered as one or more houses; there being no regular separation to distinguish them by, either within or without. These erections consist of very long broad planks, resting upon the edges of each other, tied in different parts, with withes of pine-bark. They have only slender posts on the outside, at considerable distances from each other, to which they are also fastened; but there are some larger poles within, placed aslant. The sides and ends of these habitations are about seven or eight feet in height, but the back part is somewhat higher. The planks, therefore, which compose the roof, slant forward, and, being loose, may be moved at pleasure. They may either be put close to exclude the rain, or separated to admit the light in fine weather.

Upon the whole, however, they are most miserable dwellings, and display very little attention or ingenuity in their construction; for, though the side planks are pretty close to each other in some places, they are quite open in others. Besides, these habitations have no regular doors, and can only be entered by a hole which the unequal length of the planks has accidentally made. In the sides of the house they have also holes to look out at, serving for windows; but these are very irregularly disposed, without attending, in the least, to the shape or size of them.

Within the habitations, we have frequently a view from one end to the other of these ranges of building; for, though there are some appearances of separations on each side, for the accommodation

of different persons or families, they do not intercept the sight, and generally consist of pieces of plank, extending from the side to the middle of the house. On the sides of each of these parts is a little bench, about five or six inches higher than the rest of the floor, covered with mats, whereon the family sit and sleep. The length of these benches is generally seven or eight feet, and the breadth four or five. The fire-place, which has neither hearth or chimney, is in the middle of the floor. One house, in particular, was nearly separated from the rest by a close partition; and this was the most regular building of any we had seen. In it there were four of these benches, each holding a single family at the corner; but it had not any separation by boards, and the middle of the house seemed to be common to all the inhabitants.

The furniture of their houses consists principally of chests and boxes of various sizes, piled upon each other at the sides or ends of the house; in which are deposited their garments, skins, masks, and other articles that are deemed valuable. Many of them are double, or the upper one serves as a lid to the other; some have a lid fastened with thongs, others, that are very large, have a square hole cut in the upper part, for the convenience of putting things in or taking them out. They are frequently painted black, studded with the teeth of animals, or rudely carved with figures of birds, &c. as decorations. They have also square and oblong pails, round wooden cups and bowls, wooden troughs, of about two feet in length, out of which they eat their food; bags of matting, baskets of twigs, &c.

The
are hu
house,
whole
sleepin
but th
those t
The
is, how
stench
but th
their b
at me
are nev
their b
the h
and ev
ed.

Not
of the
are no
the he
end of
the fro
These
upon
These
the na
of eac
four fe
curtain
which
move;

not intercept
of plank, ex-
the house.
little bench,
rest of the
family sit
is general-
four or five.
or chimney,
e, in parti-
by a close
ar building
ur of these
the corner;
ds, and the
n to all the

principally
upon each
; in which
masks, and

Many of
es as a lid
with thongs,
re hole cut
of putting
e frequent-
of animals,
c. as deco-
long pails,
en troughs,
which they
s of twigs,

Their implements for fishing, and other things, are hung up, or scattered in different parts of the house, without any kind of order, making, in the whole, a perfect scene of confusion, except on the sleeping benches, which have nothing on them but the mats, which are of a superior quality to those that they usually have to sit on in their boats.

The irregularity and confusion of their houses is, however, far exceeded by their nastiness and stench. They not only dry their fish within doors, but they also gut them there, which, together with their bones and fragments thrown upon the ground at meals, occasions several heaps of filth, which are never removed till it becomes troublesome from their bulk to pass over them. Every thing about the house stinks of train-oil, fish, and smoke; and every part of it is as filthy as can be imagined.

Notwithstanding all this filth and confusion, many of these houses are decorated with images; which are nothing more than the trunks of large trees, of the height of four or five feet, placed at the upper end of the apartment, with a human face carved on the front, and the hands and arms upon the sides. These figures too are variously painted, and make, upon the whole, a most ridiculous appearance. These images are generally called *Klumma*; but the names of two particular ones, standing abreast of each other, at the distance of about three or four feet, were *Natchkoa* and *Matseeta*. A sort of curtain, made of mat, usually hung before them, which the natives were sometimes unwilling to remove; and when they did consent to unveil them,

they seemed to express themselves in a very mysterious manner. It seems probable that they sometimes make offerings to them; for, if we rightly interpreted their signs, they requested us to give something to these images, when they drew the mats from before them.

From these circumstances, it was natural for us to suppose that they were representatives of their gods, or some superstitious symbols, and yet they were held in no very extraordinary degree of estimation, for, with a small quantity of brass or iron, any person might have purchased all the gods in the place.

Mr Webber, in drawing a view of the inside of a Nootka house, wherein these figures are represented, was interrupted and hindered from proceeding by one of the inhabitants. Thinking a bribe would have a proper effect upon this occasion, Mr Webber made him an offer of a button from his coat, which, being metal, immediately operated as it was intended, and he was at liberty to proceed as before. But soon after he had made a beginning, he was again interrupted by the same man, who held a mat before the figures. He therefore gave him another button, and was suffered again to proceed. He then renewed his former practice, till Mr Webber had parted with every single button; and then permitted him to proceed without any farther obstruction.

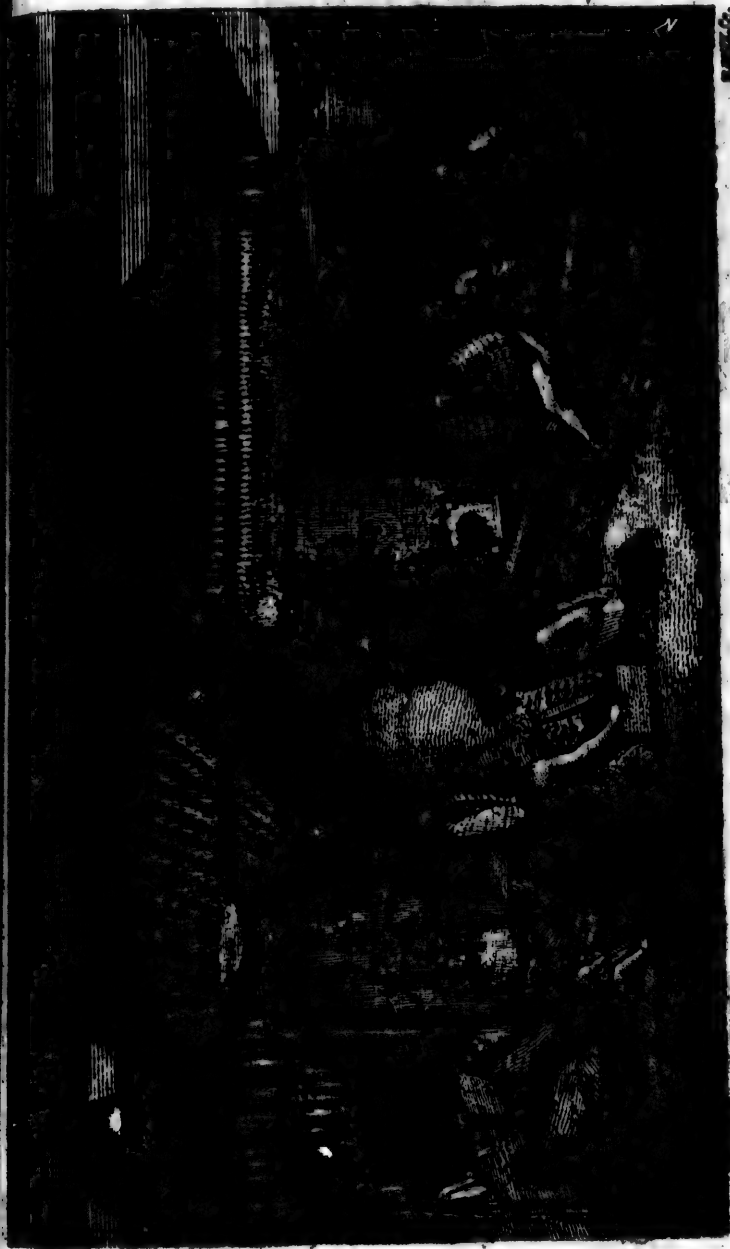
The men seem to be chiefly employed in fishing and killing animals for the sustenance of their families; few of them being seen engaged in any business in the houses; but the women were occupied

very myste-
they some-
we rightly
us to give
drew the

tural for us
es. of their
and yet they
e of estima-
or iron, any
gods in the

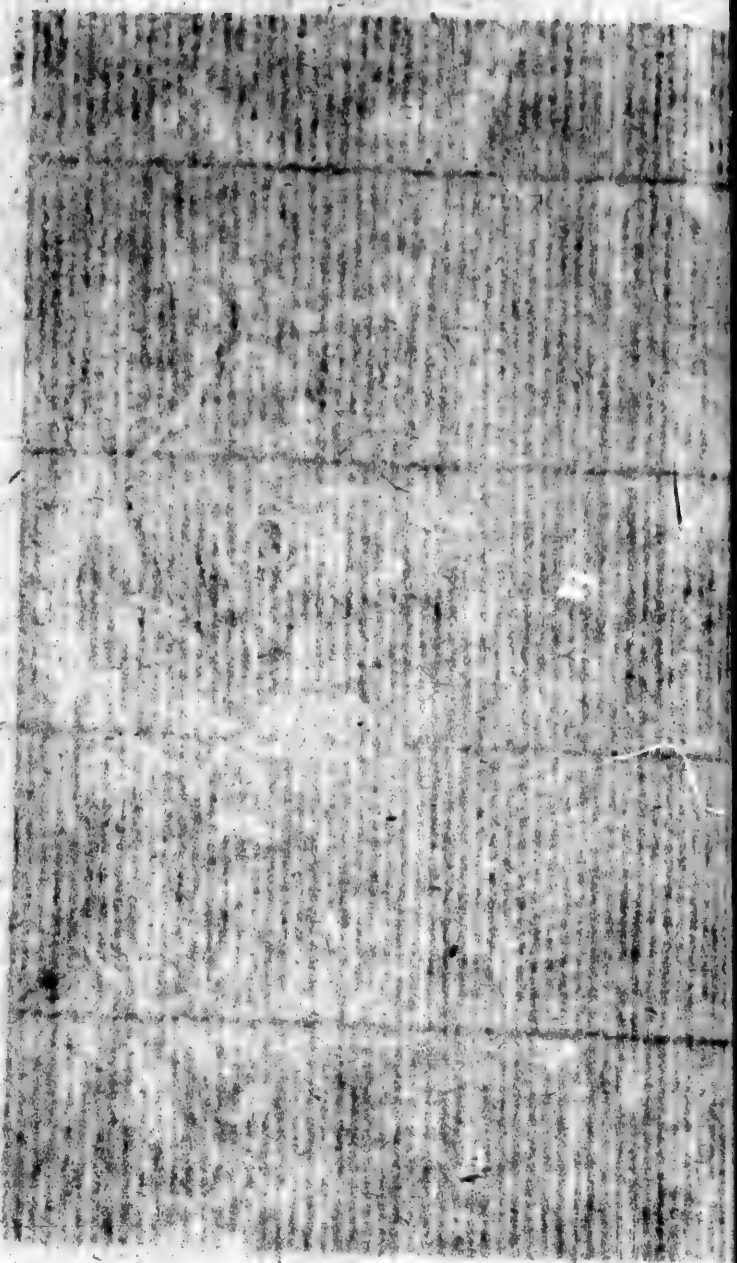
he inside of
e represent-
proceeding
cribe would
Mr Webber
boat, which,
was intend-
as before.
ng, he was
who held a
gave him
to proceed.
l Mr Web-
; and then
farther ob-

l in fishing
their fami-
n any busi-
e occupied



INSIDE OF A HOUSE IN NOOTKA SOUND.

THE HISTORY OF THE INDIAN NATIONS



in man
sardine
their
canoes
are as
these
with t
accoun
lieve t
they s
on oth
The
genera
ing th
upon
kind o
howev
were
great
for a
In the
not ev
Bes
and ex
judgm
from
ships
pass r
for th
but li
seen t
indeed
are, e
bitati

in manufacturing their garments, and in curing their sardines, which they also carry from the canoes to their houses. The women also go in the small canoes to gather muscles and other shell-fish. They are as dexterous as the men in the management of these canoes ; and when there are men in the canoes with them, they are paid very little attention to on account of their sex, none of the men offering to relieve them from the labour of the paddle. Nor do they show them any particular respect or tenderness on other occasions.

The young men are remarkably indolent ; being generally sitting about in scattered companies, basking themselves in the sun, or wallowing in the sand upon the beach like so many hogs, without any kind of covering. This disregard of decency was, however, confined solely to the men. The women were always decently clothed, and behaved with great propriety ; justly meriting all commendation for a modest bashfulness, so becoming in their sex. In them it is the more meritorious, as the men have not even a sense of shame.

Besides seeing something of their domestic life and employments, we were enabled to form some judgment of their disposition and method of living, from the frequent visits received from them at our ships in the canoes ; in which we understood they pass much of their time, especially in the summer : for they not only eat and sleep frequently in them, but lie and bask themselves in the sun, as we had seen them at their village. Their large canoes are, indeed, sufficiently spacious for that purpose ; and are, except in rainy weather, more comfortable habitations than their filthy houses.

Their greatest reliance for food seems to be the sea, as affording fish and sea-animals. The principal of the first are herrings and sardines, two species of bream, and some small cod. The herrings and sardines not only serve to be eaten fresh in their season, but to be dried and smoked as stores. The herrings also afford them another grand resource for food, which is a vast quantity of roe, prepared in an extraordinary manner. It is strewed upon the branches of the Canadian pine. It is also prepared upon a long sea-grass, which is found in great plenty upon the rocks under water. This *caviare* is served in baskets of mat, and used occasionally after being dipped in water. It has no disagreeable taste, and serves these people as a kind of white bread. They also eat the roe of some other large fish, that has a very rancid smell and taste.

The large muscle is an essential article of their food, which is found in great abundance in the Sound. After roasting them in their shells, they are stuck upon long wooden skewers, and taken off as they are wanted to be eaten, as they require no further preparation, though they are sometimes dipped in oil as a sauce. The smaller shell-fish contribute to increase the general stock, but cannot be considered as a material article of their food.

The porpoise is more common among them than any of the sea-animals; the flesh of which they cut in large pieces, dry them, as they do herrings, and eat them without farther preparation. They have also a very singular manner of preparing a sort of broth from this animal, even in its fresh state. They put some pieces of it in a wooden vessel or pail, in which there is also a

ood seems to be upon
-animals. The princi-
ardines; two species of
e herrings and sardines
h in their season, but
tores. The herrings
d resource for food;
e, prepared in a very
strewed upon small
It is also prepared
found in great plenty
This *caviare* is pre-
d used occasionally,
It has no disagreeable
as a kind of winter
of some other large
ell and taste.

ential article of their
at abundance in the
in their shells, they
skewers, and taken
aten, as they require
a they are sometimes
smaller shell-fish con-
stock, but cannot be
of their food.

non among them as
imals; the flesh and
e pieces, dry them as
without farther pre-
very singular manner
om this animal, when
ome pieces of it in a
there is also some

water, and throw heated stones into it. This ope-
ration is repeatedly performed till the contents are
supposed to be sufficiently stewed. Then fresh
stones are put in and the others taken out with a
cleft stick, serving as a pair of tongs; the vessel
being, for that purpose, always placed near the
fire. This is a common dish among them, and
seems to be a very strong nourishing food. From
these and other sea-animals, they procure oil in
great abundance, which they use upon many oc-
casion, mixed with other food as sauce, and fre-
quently sip it alone, with a kind of scoop made of
horn.

They probably feed upon other sea-animals, such
as whales, seals, and sea-otters; the skins of the
two latter being common amongst them; and
they are furnished with implements of all sorts for
the destruction of these different animals, though
perhaps they may not be able, at all seasons, to
catch them in great plenty. No great number
of fresh skins were to be seen while we lay in the
Sound.

The land-animals, at this time, appeared also to
be scarce, as we saw no flesh belonging to any of
them; and though their skins were to be had in plenty,
they might, perhaps, have been procured by traffic
from other tribes. It plainly appears, therefore,
from a variety of circumstances, that these people
are furnished with the principal part of their ani-
mal food by the sea, if we except a few gulls and
some other birds, which they shoot with their ar-
rows.

Their only winter vegetables seem to be the Ca-
nadian pine-branches, and sea-grass; but, as the

spring advances, they use others as they come in season. The most common of these were two sorts of liliaceous roots, of a mild sweetish taste, which are mucilaginous and eaten raw. The next is a root called *abeita*, and has a taste resembling liquorice. Another small sweetish root, about the thickness of *sarsaparilla* is also eaten raw. As the season advances, they have doubtless many others which we did not see. For, though there is not the least appearance of cultivation among them, there are plenty of alder, gooseberry, and currant bushes. One of the conditions, however, which they seem to require in all food, is, that it should be of the less acrid kind; for they would not touch the leek or garlic, though they sold us vast quantities of it, when they understood we liked it. They seemed, indeed, not to relish any of our food, and rejected our spiritous liquors as something disgusting and unnatural.

Small marine animals, in their fresh state, are sometimes eaten raw; though it is their ordinary practice to roast or broil their food; for they are absolute strangers to our method of boiling, as appears from their manner of preparing porpoise broth; besides, as they have only wooden vessels, it is impossible for them to perform such an operation. Their manner of eating corresponds with the nastiness of their houses and persons; for the platters and troughs, out of which they eat their food, seem never to have been washed since their original formation; the dirty remains of a former meal being only swept away by a succeeding one. Every thing solid and tough they tear to pieces with their hands and teeth; for though their knives are employed

they come in
se were two
reetish taste,
The next
e resembling
ot, about the
ay. As the

many others
there is not
among them,
and currant
ever, which
hat it should
uld not touch
us vast quan-
we liked it.
of our food,
omething dis-

sh state, are
their ordinary
for they are
piling, as ap-
porpoise broth;
sels, it is im-
n operation.
ith the nasti-
the platters
ir food, seem
original for-
r meal being
Every thing
h their hands
re employed

in cutting off the larger portions, they have not yet
endeavoured to reduce these to mouthfuls by the
same means, though so much more cleanly and con-
venient. But they do not possess even an idea of
cleanliness, and constantly eat the roots which are
dug from the ground, without attempting to shake
off the soil that adheres to them.

Whether they have any set time for meals we
never certainly knew, having seen them eat at all
hours in their canoes. But, having seen several
messes of porpoise broth preparing about noon
when we went to the village, they probably make
a principal meal about that time.

They have bows and arrows, spears, slings, short
truncheons made of bone, and a small pick-axe,
somewhat resembling the common American toma-
hawk. Some of the arrows are pointed with iron,
and others with indented bone; the spear has usu-
ally a long point made of bone. The tomahawk
is a stone of the length of seven or eight inches;
one end terminating in a point, and the other fixed
into a wooden handle. This handle is intended to
resemble the head and neck of a human figure; the
stone being fixed in the mouth so as to represent a
tongue of great magnitude. To heighten the re-
semblance, human hair is also fixed to it. This
weapon is called *taarweesh*; and they have another
weapon made of stone, which they call *seeaik*,
about ten or twelve inches long, having a square
point.

It may be reasonably concluded that they fre-
quently engage in close combat, from the number
of their stone and other weapons; and we had very
disagreeable proofs of their wars being both fre-

quent and bloody, from the quantity of human skulls that were offered us for sale.

The design and execution of their manufactures, and mechanic arts, are more extensive and ingenious than could possibly have been expected, from the natural disposition of the people, and what little progress they had made in civilization. The flaxen and woollen garments engage their first care, as being the most material of those that may be classed under the head of manufactures. The former are fabricated from the bark of the pine-tree, beat into a mass resembling hemp. After being prepared in a proper manner, it is spread upon a stick, which is fastened to two others in an erect position. The manufacturer, who sits on her hams at this simple machine, knots it across, at the distance of about half an inch from each other, with small plaited threads. Though it cannot by this method be rendered so close and firm as cloth that is woven, it is sufficiently impervious to the air, and is likewise softer and more pliable.

Though their woollen garments are probably manufactured in the same manner, they have much the appearance of a woven cloth; but the supposition of their being wrought in a loom is destroyed, by the various figures that are ingeniously inserted in them, it being very improbable that these people should be able to produce such a complex work except immediately by their hands. They are of different qualities, some resembling our coarsest sort of blankets, and others not much inferior to our finest sort, and certainly both warmer and softer.

ity of human
manufactures,
ve and ingeni-
pected, from
nd what little
. The flaxen
t care, as be-
ay be classed
e former are
ree, beat into
g prepared in
stick, which
osition. The
at this simple
ance of about
small plaited
s method be
hat is woven,
and is like-

are probably
y have much
the supposi-
is destroyed,
usly inserted
these people
omplex work
They are of
our coarsest
ch inferior to
warmer and

The wool, of which they are manufactured, seems to be produced by different animals, particularly the fox and brown lynx ; that from the lynx is the finest, and nearly resembles our coarser wools in colour ; but the hair, which also grows upon the animal, being intermixed with it, the appearance of it is somewhat different when wrought. The ornamental figures in these garments are disposed with great taste, and are generally of a different colour, being usually dyed either of a deep brown or a yellow ; the latter of which, when new, equals, in brightness, the best in our carpets.

Their fondness for carving on all their wooden articles corresponds with their taste in working figures upon their garments. Nothing is to be seen without a kind of freeze-work, or a representation of some animal upon it ; but the most general figure is that of the human face, which is frequently cut out upon birds, and the other monstrous things already mentioned, and even upon their weapons of bone and stone.

The general design of these figures conveys a sufficient knowledge of the objects they are intended to represent, though, in the carving, very little dexterity is displayed. But, in the execution of many of the masks and heads, they have shown themselves ingenious sculptors. They preserve, with the greatest exactness, the general character of their own faces, and finish the more minute parts with great accuracy and neatness. That these people have a strong propensity to works of this sort is observable in a variety of particulars. Representations of human figures, birds, beasts, fish, models

of their canoes, and household utensils, were found among them in very great abundance.

Having mentioned their skill in some of the imitative arts, such as working figures in their garments, and engraving, or carving them in wood, we may also add their drawing them in colours. The whole process of their whale-fishery has been represented, in this manner, on the caps they wear. This, indeed, was rudely executed, but served at least to convince us, that though they have not the knowledge of letters amongst them, they have a notion of representing actions, in a lasting way, exclusive of recording them in their songs and traditions. They have also other painted figures, which, perhaps, have no established significations, and are only the creation of fancy or caprice.

Though the structure of their canoes is simple, they appear well calculated for every useful purpose. The largest, which contains upwards of twenty people, are formed of a single tree. The length of many of them is forty feet, the breadth seven, and the depth three. They become gradually narrower from the middle towards each end, the stern ending perpendicularly, with a knob at the top. The fore part stretches forwards and upwards, and ends in a point or prow, much higher than the sides of the canoe, which are nearly straight. The greatest part of them are without any ornament; some have a little carving, and are studded with seal's teeth on the surface. Some have also a kind of additional prow, usually painted with the figure of some animal. They have neither seats nor any other supporters on the inside, except some small round sticks, about half the depth of the canoe. They

ensils, were found
ance.

in some of the imi-
ures in their gar-
ing them in wood,
them in colours.
le-fishery has been
ne caps they wear.
ed, but served at
they have not the
hem, they have a
in a lasting way,
eir songs and tra-
ted figures, which,
ifications, and are
rice.

canoes is simple,
ery useful purpose.
ds of twenty peo-
. The length of
readth seven, and
gradually narrower
, the stern ending
ne top. The fore
rds, and ends in a
n the sides of the
The greatest part
ent; some have a
th seal's teeth on
ind of additional
figure of some ani-
or any other sup-
ome small round
ne canoe. They

are very light, and, on account of their breadth and flatness, swim firmly, without an out-rigger, of which they are all destitute. Their paddles, which are small and light, resemble a large leaf in shape, being pointed at the bottom, broad in the middle, and gradually becoming narrower in the shaft, the whole length being about five feet. By constant use, they have acquired great dexterity in the management of these paddles, but they never make use of any sails.

For fishing and hunting their instruments are ingeniously contrived, and completely made. They consist of nets, hooks and lines, harpoons, gigs, and an instrument resembling an oar. The latter is about twenty feet in length, four or five inches in breadth, and of the thickness of half an inch. The edges, for about two-thirds of its length, are set with sharp bone teeth, about two inches in length, the other third serving for a handle. With this instrument they attack herrings and sardines, and such other fish as come in shoals. It is struck into the shoal, and the fish are taken either upon or between the teeth. Their hooks, which are made of bone and wood, display no great ingenuity; but the harpoon, which is used in striking whales, and other sea-animals, manifests a great extent of contrivance. It consists of a piece of bone, formed into two barbs, in which the oval blade of a large muscle-shell, and the point of the instrument, is fixed. Two or three fathoms of a rope is fastened to this harpoon, and, in throwing it, they use a shaft of about fifteen feet long, to which the rope is fastened; to one end of which the harpoon is fixed so as to leave the shaft floating, as a

buoy upon the water, when the animal is struck with the harpoon.

We are strangers to the manner of their catching or killing land animals, but it is probable that they shoot the smaller sorts with their arrows, and encounter bears, wolves, and foxes, with their spears. They have several sorts of nets, which are perhaps applied to that purpose, it being customary for them to throw them over their heads, to signify their use, when they offered them for sale. Sometimes they decoy animals, by disguising themselves with a skin, and running upon all fours, in which they are remarkably nimble, making, at the same time, a kind of noise, or neighing. The masks, or carved heads, as well as the dried heads of different animals, are used upon these occasions.

Every thing of the rope kind, which they use in making their various articles, is formed either from thongs of skins, and sinews of animals, or from the flaxen substance of which they manufacture their mantles. The sinews were sometimes so remarkably long, that it was hardly possible they could have belonged to any other animal than the whale. The same conjecture may be hazarded with regard to the bones of which they make their instruments and weapons.

The assistance they receive from iron tools contributes to their dexterity in wooden performances. Their implements are almost wholly made of iron, at least we saw but one chissel that was not made of that metal, and that was only of bone. The knife and the chissel are the principal form that iron assumes amongst them. The chissel consists of a flat long piece fastened into a wooden handle.

mal is struck
f their catch-
probable that
arrows, and
h their spears.
h are perhaps
customary for
s, to signify
sale. Some-
ng themselves
urs, in which
at the same
he masks, or
s of different
h they use in
d either from
, or from the
ufacture their
s so remark-
le they could
n the whale.
l with regard
r instruments

on tools con-
performances.
made of iron,
was not made
bone. The
pal form that
issel consists
oden handle

A stone is their mallet, and a bit of fish-skin their polisher. Some of these chissels were nine or ten inches in length, and three or four in breadth, but they were, in general, considerably smaller.

Some of their knives are very large, and their blades are crooked, the edge being on the back or convex part. What we have seen among them were about the breadth and thickness of an iron hoop, and their singular form sufficiently proves that they are not of European make. These iron tools are sharpened upon a coarse slate whet-stone, and the whole instrument is kept continually bright.

Iron is called by the natives *seekemaile*, a name which they also give to tin, and other white metals. It being so common among these people, we were anxious to discover how it was conveyed to them. As soon as we arrived in the Sound, we perceived that they had a knowledge of traffic, and an inclination to pursue it; and we were afterwards convinced that they had not acquired this knowledge from a cursory interview with any strangers, but it seemed habitual to them, and was a practice in which they were well skilled.

With whom they carry on this traffic we cannot ascertain, for though we saw several articles of European manufacture, or such at least as had been derived from some civilized nation, such as brass and iron, it does not certainly follow that they were received immediately from these nations. For we never could obtain the least information of their having seen ships like ours before, nor of their having been engaged in commerce with such people. Many circumstances corroborate to prove this beyond a doubt. On our arrival, they were earnest

in their inquiries, whether we meant to settle amongst them, and whether we were friendly visitors, informing us, at the same time, that they freely gave us wood and water from motives of friendship.

This sufficiently proves, that they considered themselves as proprietors of the place, and dreaded no superiority; for it would have been an unnatural inquiry, if any ships had been here before, and had supplied themselves with wood and water, and then departed, for they might then reasonably expect that we should do the same. It must be admitted, indeed, that they exhibited no marks of surprise at beholding our ships; but this may, with great propriety, be attributed to their natural indolence of temper, and their wanting a thirst of curiosity. They were never startled at the report of a musquet, till they one day showed us that their hide dresses were impenetrable to their spears and arrows, when one of our people shot a musquet ball through one of them that had been six times folded. Their astonishment at this plainly indicated their ignorance of the effect of fire-arms. This was afterwards very frequently confirmed, when we used them to shoot birds, at which they appeared greatly confounded. And our explanation of the piece, together with the nature of its operation, with the aid of shot and ball, struck them so forcibly, as to convince us of their having no previous ideas on this matter.

Though some account of a voyage to this coast, by the Spaniards, in 1774, or 1775, had arrived in England before we sailed, the circumstances just mentioned sufficiently prove that these ships had

to settle a friendly visit, that they had motives of

considered and dreaded an unnatural here before, and water, reasonably. It must be no marks of may, with natural in a thirst of the report as that their spears and a musquet en six times plainly indi- f fire-arms. confirmed, which they explanation f its opera- ck them so ing no pre-

this coast, arrived in stances just ships had

never been at Nootka *. It was also evident, that iron would not have been in so many hands, nor would the use of it have been so well known, if they had so lately obtained the first knowledge of it.

From their general use of this metal, it probably comes from some constant source, in the way of traffic, and they have perhaps been long supplied with it, for they use their tools with as much dexterity as the longest practice can acquire. The most natural conjecture, therefore, is, that they trade for their iron with other Indian tribes, who may have some communication with European settlements upon that continent, or receive it through several intermediate nations. By the same means they probably obtain their brass and copper.

Not only the rude materials, but some manufactured articles seem to find their way hither. The brass ornaments for noses are made in so masterly a manner, that the Indians cannot be supposed capable of fabricating them. We are certain that the materials are European, as all the American tribes are ignorant of the method of making brass, though copper has been frequently met with, and, from its ductility, might easily be fashioned into any shape, and polished. If such articles are not used by our traders to Hudson's Bay and Canada, in their traffic with the natives, they must have been introduced at Nootka from Mexico; whence, it is

* It has since appeared, that they were not within two degrees of Nootka, and probably the inhabitants of that place never heard of these Spanish ships.

probable, the two silver table-spoons were originally derived.

Little knowledge can we be supposed to have acquired of the political and religious institutions established among these people. We discovered, however, that there were such men as chiefs, distinguished by the title of *Acweek*, to whom the others are, in some degree, subordinate. But the authority of each of these great men seems to extend no farther than to his own family, who acknowledge him as their head. As they were not all elderly men, it is possible this title may be hereditary.

Nothing that we saw could give us any insight into their notions of religion, except the figures already mentioned, called *Klumma*. These perhaps were idols, but as the word *acweek* was frequently mentioned when they spoke of them, we may suppose them to be images of some of their ancestors, whose memories they venerate. This, however, is all conjecture, for we could receive no information concerning them, knowing little more of their language than to enable us to ask the names of things, and being incapable of holding any conversation with the native relative to their traditions or their institutions.

Their language is neither harsh nor disagreeable, farther than proceeds from their pronouncing the *k* and *b* with less softness than we do. As to the composition of their language we are enabled to say but little. It may, however, be inferred, from their slow and distinct method of speaking, that it has few prepositions or conjunctions, and is destitute of even a single interjection to express sur-

prise or admiration. The affinity it may bear to other languages, we have not been able sufficiently to trace, not having proper specimens to compare it with; but from the few Mexican words we have procured, there is an obvious agreement, throughout the language, in the frequent terminations of the words in *l*, *tl*, or *z*.

The word *wakash* was frequently in the mouths of the people of Nootka. It seemed to express approbation, applause, and friendship. Whenever they appeared to be pleased or satisfied at any sight or occurrence, they would call out *wakash! wakash!* It is worthy of remark, that as these people so essentially differ from the natives of the islands in the Pacific Ocean, in their persons, customs, and language, we cannot suppose their respective progenitors to have belonged to the same tribe, when they emigrated into those places where we now find their descendants.

We have already mentioned that we put to sea in the evening of the 26th of April, with manifest indications of an approaching storm, and these signs did not deceive us. We had scarce sailed out of the Sound when the wind shifted from northeast to southeast by east, and blew a strong gale, with squalls and rain, the sky being at the same time uncommonly dark. Being apprehensive of the wind's veering more to the south, which would expose us to the danger of a lee-shore, we got the tacks on board, and made all the sail we could to the southwest. It fortunately happened that the wind veered no further toward the south than southeast, so that early the next morning we were entirely clear of the coast. Captain Clerke's ship being at some

distance a-stern, the commodore brought to till she came up, and then both vessels steered a north-westerly course. The wind blew with great violence, and the weather was thick and hazy. Between one and two o'clock in the afternoon there was a perfect hurricane; so that the commodore deemed it exceedingly dangerous to run any longer before it; he therefore brought the ships to, with their heads to the south. In this situation, the Resolution sprung a leak in her starboard quarter, which, at first, alarmed us extremely; but, after the water was baled out, which kept us employed till midnight, it was kept under by means of one pump. The wind having, in the evening, veered to the southward, its fury in some measure abated, upon which we stretched to the west; but about eleven the gale again increased, and continued till five the next morning, when the storm began to moderate.

The weather now clearing up, we were able to see several leagues round us, and steered more to the north. At noon our longitude was $229^{\circ} 26'$ east, and our latitude $50^{\circ} 1'$ north. We now steered northwest by north, with a fresh gale, and fair weather. But, towards the evening, the wind again blew hard, with squalls and rain. With this weather we continued the same course till the 30th, when we steered north by west, intending to make the land. Captain Cook regretted that he could not do it sooner, as we were now passing the spot where the pretended streight of Admiral de Fonte has been placed by geographers. Though the captain gave no credit to such vague and improbable stories, he was desirous of keeping the coast of

ht to till she
ed a north-
h great vio-
hazy. Be-
ernoon there
commodore
n any longer
ips to, with
ion, the Re-
ard quarter,
; but, after
us employed
means of one
ning, veered
asure abated,
; but about
continued till
m began to

were able to
ered more to
was $229^{\circ} 26'$
e now steer-
gale, and fair
e wind again
th this wea-
ill the 30th,
ing to make
at he could
ing the spot
ral de Fonte
ugh the cap-
l improbable
the coast of

America aboard, that this point might be cleared up beyond dispute. But he considered, that it would have been very imprudent to have engaged with the land while the weather was so tempestuous, or to have lost the advantage of a fair wind by waiting for less stormy weather. This day, at twelve o'clock, our latitude was $53^{\circ} 22'$ north, and our longitude $225^{\circ} 14'$ east.

On Friday the 1st of May, not seeing land, we steered to the northeast, having a fresh breeze at south-southeast and south, with squalls and showers of hail and rain. About seven o'clock in the evening we descried the land at the distance of twelve or fourteen leagues. At four the next morning the coast was seen from southeast to north by west, the nearest part of it being five or six leagues distant. At this time, the northern point of an inlet, or at least what appeared to be one, bore east by south; and from it to the northward there seemed to be many bays and harbours along the coast. At six o'clock, making a nearer approach to the land, we steered northwest by north, this being the direction of the coast; and, between eleven and twelve, we passed a cluster of little islands situate near the continent, to the northward of the southern point of an extensive bay. An arm of this bay seemed to extend in towards the north, behind a round lofty mountain that stands between it and the sea. To this mountain captain Cook gave the name of Mount Edgecumbe; and the point of land projecting from it, he called Cape Edgecumbe. The latitude of this cape is $57^{\circ} 3'$ north, and its longitude $224^{\circ} 7'$ east. The land, except in some parts close to the sea, is of a considerable height, abounding with

hills. Mount Edgecumbe, which far out-tops all the rest, was entirely covered with snow, as were also the other elevated hills ; but the lower ones, and the flatter spots near the sea, were destitute of it, and covered with wood.

In our progress to the northward, we found that the coast from Cape Edgecumbe trended to the north and northeast for six or seven leagues, and there formed a spacious bay. There being some islands in the entrance of this bay, the commodore named it the Bay of Islands. It seemed to branch out into several arms, one of which turned towards the south, and may perhaps communicate with the bay on the eastern side of Cape Edgecumbe, and thus render the land of that cape an island. On the 3d, at half an hour after four in the morning, Mount Edgecumbe bore south 54° east ; a large inlet north 50° east ; and the most advanced point of land towards the northwest, lying under a very lofty peaked mountain, which obtained the appellation of Mount Fair-Weather, bore north 32° west. The inlet we named Cross Sound, having first observed it on the day so marked in our calendar. The south-eastern point of this Sound is an elevated promontory, which we distinguished by the name of Cross Cape. To the point under the above-mentioned peaked mountain we gave the name of Cape Fair-Weather. At noon this cape was distant twelve or thirteen leagues.

We had now light breezes from the northwest, which continued several days. We steered to the southwest, and west-southwest, till the morning of the 4th, when we tacked and stood towards the shore. At twelve o'clock Mount Fair-Weather

out-tops all
ow, as were
lower ones,
destitute of

e found that
ended to the
leagues, and
being some
commodore
d to branch
ned towards
ate with the
cumbe, and
island. On
e morning,
st; a large
anced point
nder a very
the appella-
h 32° west,
ng first ob-
r calendar.

s an elevated
y the name
the above-
he name of
pe was dis-

northwest,
ered to the
morning of
owards the
ir-Weather

bore north 63° east, and the shore under it was about a dozen leagues distant. The mount is the highest of a chain or ridge of mountains that rise at the north-western entrance of Cross Sound, and extend towards the northwest, parallel with the coast. These mountains were covered with snow, from the highest summit down to the sea-coast, except a few places, where we could discern trees that seemed to rise as it were from the sea. About five o'clock in the afternoon the top of a high mountain appeared above the horizon, bearing north 26° west, and, as we afterwards found, near forty leagues distant. We supposed that it was the Mount St Elias of Commodore Beering. We saw, in the course of this day, several porpoises, seals, and whales; also great numbers of gulls, and many flocks of birds which had a black circle about the head, and a black band on the tip of the tail and upper part of the wings, the rest being white below and bluish above. We likewise observed a brownish duck, with a blackish or dark blue head and neck.

As we had light winds, with occasional calms, we proceeded but slowly. On the 6th, at mid-day, the nearest land was at the distance of about eight leagues. In a north-easterly direction there appeared to be a bay, and an island near its southern point, covered with wood. This is probably the place where Beering anchored. Southward of the bay (which captain Cook named Beering's Bay, in honour of its discoverer) the ridge of mountains, already mentioned, is interrupted by a plain of several leagues in extent, beyond which the sight was unbounded. In the afternoon we sounded, and

found a muddy bottom at the depth of about seventy fathoms. Soon afterwards, having a light northerly breeze, we steered to the westward; and at noon, the next day, we were at the distance of four or five leagues from the shore. From this station we could perceive a bay under the high land, with low wood-land on each side of it. We now found that the coast trended considerably to the west, and as we had but little wind, and that chiefly from the westward, we made a slow progress. On the 9th. about noon, Mount St Elias bore north 30° east, the distance of nineteen leagues. This mountain stands twelve leagues inland, in the longitude of 219° east, and in the latitude of $60^{\circ} 27'$ north. It belongs to a ridge of very lofty mountains, which may be reckoned a kind of continuation of the former, being separated from them only by the plain before mentioned.

On Sunday the 10th, at twelve o'clock, we were about three leagues distant from the coast of the continent, which extended from east half-north, to northwest half-west. To the westward of the latter direction was an island, at the distance of six leagues. A point, which the commodore named Cape Suckling, projects towards the north-eastern end of this island. The extremity of the cape is low, but within it stands a hill of considerable height, which is divided from the mountains by low land, so that the cape, at a distance, has an insular appearance. On the north side of Cape Suckling is a bay, which seemed to be extensive, and to be sheltered from most winds. Captain Cook had some thoughts of repairing to this bay, in order to

of about sea-
having a light
westward; and
the distance of
e. From this
nder the high
e of it. We
considerably to
wind, and that
e a slow pro-
Mount St Elias
ce of nineteen
ve leagues in
and in the la-
to a ridge of
be reckoned a
, being sepa-
efore mention-

clock, we were
e coast of the
half-north, to
ard of the lat-
distance of six
nodore named
north-eastern
of the cape is
f considerable
untains by low
has an insular
Cape Suckling
ive, and to be
in Cook had
y, in order to

stop the leak of his ship, all our endeavours to effect that purpose at sea having proved fruitless. We therefore steered for the cape; but, having only variable light breezes, we advanced towards it slowly. Before night, however, we had approached near enough to see some low land projecting from the cape to the northwest: we also observed some little islands in the bay, and several elevated rocks between the cape and the northeast extremity of the island. As there appeared to be a passage on each side of these rocks, we continued steering thither the whole night. Early the next morning, the wind shifted from northeast to north. This being against us, the commodore relinquished his design of going into the bay, and bore up for the west end of the island. There being a calm about ten o'clock, he embarked in a boat, and landed on the island, with a view of seeing what lay on the other side; but finding that the hills were at a greater distance than he expected, and that the way was woody and steep, he laid aside that intention. On a small eminence near the shore, he left, at the foot of a tree, a bottle containing a paper, on which the names of our ships, and the date of our discovery were inscribed: he also inclosed two silver two-penny pieces of English coin, which, with many others, had been furnished him by Dr Kaye, now dean of Lincoln; and, in testimony of his esteem for that gentleman, he distinguished the island by the name of Kaye's Island.

This isle does not exceed twelve leagues in length, and its breadth is not above a league and a half in any part of it. The southwest point, whose latitude is $59^{\circ} 49'$ north, and longitude $216^{\circ} 58'$ east,

is a naked rock, considerably elevated above the land within it. There is also a high rock lying off it, which, when seen in some particular directions, has the appearance of a ruinous castle. The island terminates, towards the sea, in bare sloping cliffs, with a beach consisting of large pebbles, intermixed in some places with a clayey sand. The cliffs are composed of a bluish stone or rock, and are, except in a few parts, in a soft or mouldering state. Some parts of the shore are interrupted by small valleys and gullies, in each of which a rivulet or torrent rushes down with a considerable degree of impetuosity; though, perhaps, only furnished from the snow, and lasting no longer than till the whole is dissolved. These valleys are filled with pine-trees; and they also abound in other parts of the island, which, indeed, is covered as it were with a broad girdle of wood. The trees, however, are far from being of an extraordinary growth; few of them seeming to be larger than what a person might grasp round with his arms, and their general height being forty or fifty feet; so that they would be of no great service for shipping, except as materials for making top-gallant masts, and other small things. The pine-trees appeared to be all of one species; and neither the Canadian pine nor cypress was to be seen.

Upon the edges of the cliffs, the surface was covered with a kind of turf, about six inches thick, apparently composed of the common moss; and the upper part of the island had nearly the same appearance in point of colour; but that which covered it, whatever it was, seemed to be thicker. Among the trees were some current and hawberry bushes,

a yellow
not yet
posed
Linna
A
or thro
were
large,
likewi
shore,
flying
burrea
quebr
one w
white
with a
were
dark-b
smaller
were b
the wi
flying
ing ab
four w
part of
where
of the
walker
of fear
was a
were b
were o
the isl

above the
k lying off
directions.
The island
pping cliffs,
intermix-
The cliffs
k, and are,
ering state.
d by small
rivulet or
degree of
ished from
he whole is
pine-trees;
the island,
th a broad
re far from
w of them
night grasp
eight being
be of no
aterials for
small things.
ne species;
resa was to
urface was
ches thick,
moss; and
ae same ap-
ich covered
. Among
rry bushes,

a yellow-flowered violet, and the leaves of other plants not yet in flower, particularly one which was supposed by Mr Anderson to be the *heracleum* of Linnæus.

A crow was seen flying about the wood; two or three white-headed eagles, like those of Nootka, were also observed; besides another species equally large, which had a white breast. The commodore likewise saw, in his passage from the ship to the shore, a number of fowls sitting on the water or flying about; the principal of which were gulls, hurras, shags, ducks, or large petrels, divers, and quebrantahuesses. The divers were of two sorts; one very large, whose colour was black, with a white belly and breast, the other of a smaller size, with a longer and more pointed bill. The ducks were also of two species, one brownish, with a dark-blue or blackish head and neck, the other smaller, and of a dirty black colour. The shags were large and black, having a white spot behind the wings. The gulls were of the common sort, flying in flocks. There was also a single bird flying about, apparently of the gull kind, whose colour was a snowy white, with some black along part of the upper side of its wings. At the place where our party landed, a fox came from the verge of the wood, and eyeing them with little emotion, walked leisurely on without manifesting any signs of fear. He was not of a large size, and his colour was a reddish yellow. To or three small seals were likewise seen near the shore; but no traces were discovered of inhabitants having ever been in the island.

Captain Cook, with those who accompanied him, returned on board in the afternoon, and, with a light breeze from the east, steered for the south-west side of the island, which we got round by eight o'clock in the evening; we then stood for the westernmost land that was now in sight. At the northeast end of Kaye's Island stands another island, extending northwest and southeast about nine miles, to within the same distance of the northwestern boundary of the bay mentioned before, to which the appellation of Comptroller's Bay was given. Early the next morning Kaye's Island was still in sight, bearing east by south; and, at this time, we were at the distance of four or five leagues from the main. At noon, the eastern point of a spacious inlet bore west northwest, about three leagues distant. From Comptroller's Bay to this point, which the commodore named Cape Hinchingbroke, the direction of the coast is nearly east and west. Beyond this it appeared to incline towards the south; a direction very different from that which is marked out in the modern charts, founded on the late discoveries of the Russians, insomuch that we had some reason to expect, that we should find, through the inlet before us, a passage to the north, and that the land to the west and southwest was a group of islands. The wind was now southeasterly, and we were menaced with a fog and a storm; and captain Cook was desirous of getting into some place to stop the leak, before we had another gale to encounter. We therefore steered for the inlet, which we had no sooner reached, than the weather became exceedingly foggy, and it was deemed necessary that the ships should be secured in

panied him, and, with a party of the southern Indians, not round by the shore, stood for the night. At the next morning, another island, at nine miles, to the northwestern point, to which a name was given. It was still in this time, we were ten leagues from the shore of a spacious bay, of leagues distance, which we called Ingbroke, the point to the west. Beyond the south; which is marked by the late discovery, that we had reached, through the north, and there was a group of islands, easterly, and a storm; and going into some other gale for the inlet, the weather was deemed to be secured in

some place or other, till the sky would clear up. With this view, we hauled close under Cape Hinchinbroke, and cast anchor before a small cove over a clayey bottom, in eight fathoms water, at the distance of about two furlongs from the shore.

Soon after we had anchored, the boats were hoisted out, some to fish and others to sound. The seine, at the same time, was drawn in the cove; but without success, as it was torn. At intervals, the fog cleared away, and gave us a view of the neighbouring land. The cape was one league distant; the western point of the inlet five leagues; and the land on that side extended to west by north. Between this point and northwest by west, we could discern no land. The most westerly point we had in view on the north shore, was at the distance of two leagues. Betwixt this point, and the shore under which our ships now lay at anchor, is a bay about three leagues deep, on the south eastern side of which are several coves, and, in the middle, stand some rocky islands.

Mr Gore was dispatched in a boat to these islands, in order to shoot some birds that might serve for food. He had scarcely reached them, when about twenty natives appeared in two large canoes; upon which he returned to the ships, and they followed him. They were unwilling, however, to venture along-side, but kept at a little distance, shouting aloud, and clapping and extending their arms alternately. They then began a kind of song, much after the manner of the inhabitants of King George's or Nootka Sound. Their heads were strewed with feathers, and one of them held out a white garment, which we supposed was intended as a token of

friendship, while another, for near a quarter of an hour, stood up in the canoe, entirely naked, with his arms extended like a cross, and motionless. Their canoes were constructed upon a different plan from those of Nootka. The frame consisted of slender laths, and the outside was formed of the skins of seals, or other animals of a similar kind. Though we returned their signs of amity, and endeavoured, by the most expressive gestures, to encourage them to come along-side, we were unable to prevail upon them. Though some of our people repeated several of the most common words of the language of Nootka, such as *makook* and *seeke-maile*, they did not appear to understand them. After they had received some presents that were thrown to them, they retired towards the shore, intimating, by signs, that they would pay us another visit the next morning. Two of them, however, came off to us in the night, each in a small canoe; hoping, perhaps, that they might find us all asleep, and might have an opportunity of pilfering; for they went away as soon as they perceived themselves discovered.

The wind, during the night, blew hard and in squalls, with rain, and thick hazy weather. The next morning, about ten, the wind became more moderate, and the weather in some measure up, we got up our anchors and made sail to search for some convenient place where we might stop the leak, as our present station was too much exposed for that purpose. Captain Cook at first proposed to have gone up the bay before which our ships had anchored; but he was afterwards induced, by the clearness of the weather, to steer towards the north, further up the great inlet. After we had

passed the northwest point of the above-mentioned bay, we found that the coast, on that side, inclined to the eastward. We did not follow it, but proceeded on our course to the northward, for a point of land which we observed in that direction.

The Americans who had visited us the preceding day, came off again in the morning in five or six canoes; but as they did not come till after we were under sail, they were unable to reach the ships, though they followed us for a considerable time. In the afternoon, before two o'clock, the unfavourable weather returned with so thick a haze, that we could discern no other land but the point just mentioned, off which we arrived between four and five o'clock, and found it to be a little island situate at the distance of about two miles from the neighbouring coast, being a point of land, on the eastern side of which we discovered an excellent bay or rather harbour. To this we plied up, while the wind blew in very hard squalls, accompanied with rain. Though, at some intervals, we could see land in every direction, yet, in general, there was so great a fog, that we could only perceive the shores of the bay for which we were now steering. In passing the island, we found a muddy bottom at the depth of twenty-six fathoms. Not long after, we found sixty and seventy fathoms, over a rocky bottom; and, in the entrance of the bay, the depth of water was from thirty to six fathoms. At length, about eight o'clock, we were obliged, by the violence of the squalls, to cast anchor in thirteen fathoms water, before we had proceeded so far into the bay as the commodore intended; but we thought ourselves fortunate in having the ships

already secured; for the night was extremely tempestuous.

Though the weather was so turbulent, the natives were not deterred from paying us a visit. Three of them came off in two canoes; two men in one, and one in the other, being the number that each canoe could carry. For they were constructed nearly in the same manner with those of the Esquimaux, except that in one of them were two holes for two persons to sit in, and in the other but one. These men had each a stick of the length of about three feet, with the large feathers or wings of birds fastened to it. These they frequently held up to us, probably as tokens of peace. The treatment these three received, induced many others to visit us, between one and two o'clock the following morning, in both great and small canoes. Some of them ventured on board the *Resolution*, though not before some of our people had stepped into their boats. Among those who came on board was a middle-aged man, who, as we afterwards found, was the chief. His dress was made of the skin of the sea-otter, and he had on his head such a cap as is worn by the inhabitants of Nootka, embellished with sky-blue glass beads. He appeared to value these much more than our white glass beads. Any kind of beads, however, seemed to be in high estimation among these people, who readily gave in exchange for them whatever they had, even their fine sea-otter skins.

They were very desirous of iron, but absolutely rejected small bits, and wanted pieces nine or ten inches long at least, and of the breadth of three or four fingers. They obtained but little of this com-

remely tem-
ent, the na-
us a visit.
two men
number that
constructed
the Esqui-
two holes
her but one.
th of about
ngs of birds
held up to
e treatment
ers to visit
e following
Some of
on, though
ed into their
board was a
ards found,
the skin of
uch a cap as
embellished
ed to value
eads. Any
high esti-
gave in ex-
en their fine
absolutely
nine or ten
of three or
of this com-

modity from us, as, by this time, it was become rather scarce. The points of some of their spears were of this metal, others were of copper, and a few were of bone, of which last the points of their arrows, darts, &c. were formed.

The chief could not be prevailed upon to venture below the upper deck, nor did he and his companions continue long on board. While they were with us, it was necessary to watch them narrowly, as they soon manifested an inclination for thieving. At length, when they had been three or four hours along-side the Resolution, they all quitted her and repaired to the Discovery, which ship none of them had before been on board of, except one man, who came from her at this very time, and immediately returned to her, in company with the others. As soon as they had departed from our ship, captain Cook dispatched a boat to sound the head of the bay; for, as the wind was moderate at present, he had an intention of laying the ship ashore, if a proper place could be found for the process of stopping the leak. Soon afterwards all the Americans quitted the Discovery, and made their way towards our boat that was employed in sounding. The officer who was in her observing their approach, returned to the ship, and all the canoes followed him. The crew of the boat had no sooner repaired on board, leaving in her, by way of guard, two of their number, than several of the natives stepped into her; some of whom presented their spears before the two men, while others loosed the rope by which she was fastened to the ship, and the rest were so daring as to attempt to tow her away. But the moment they saw that we were preparing to oppose

them, they let her go, stepped out of her into their own boats, and made signs to us to persuade us to lay down our arms, being to all appearance perfectly unconcerned.

This attempt, though a very bold one, was scarce equal to what they had meditated on board Captain Clerke's ship. The man whom we mentioned before as having conducted his countrymen from the Resolution to the Discovery, had first been on board of the latter; where looking down all the hatchways, and observing no one except the officer of the watch, and one or two others, he doubtless imagined that she might be plundered with ease, particularly as she was stationed at some distance from the Resolution. It was unquestionably with this intent, that the natives went off to her. Several of them went on board without the least ceremony, and drawing their knives, made signs to the officer and other people upon deck to keep off, and began to search for plunder. The first thing they laid hold of was the rudder of one of our boats, which they immediately threw overboard to those of their party who had continued in the canoes. But before they had time to find another object that struck their fancy, the ship's crew were alarmed, and many of them armed with cutlasses came upon deck. On observing this, the plunderers all sneaked off into their canoes, with evident marks of indifference. It was at this time that our boat was occupied in sounding, as we have already mentioned; and the natives, without delay, proceeded towards her after the disappointment they had met with at the Discovery. Their visiting us so early in the morning was un-

er into their
rsuade us to
nce perfect-

e, was scarce
ard Captain
entioned be-
en from the
een on board
t the hatch-
fficer of the
ess imagined
particularly
om the Re-

this intent,
rai of them
zimony, and
e officer and
nd began to
ey laid hold
which they
f their party
before they
truck their
nd many of
deck. On
ked off into
fference. It
ed in sound-
the natives,
fter the dis-

Discovery.
ing was un-

doubtedly with a view of plundering, on a supposi-
tion that they should find all our people asleep.

From the circumstances above related it may rea-
sonably be inferred, that these people are not at all
acquainted with fire-arms. For if they had known
any thing of their effect, they would by no means
have ventured to attempt carrying off a boat from
under a ship's guns, in the face of upwards of a
hundred men; for most of the Resolution's people
were looking at them at the very instant of their
making the attempt. However we left them as
ignorant in this particular as we found them; for
they neither saw nor heard a musket fired, except at
birds..

As we were on the point of weighing anchor in
order to proceed farther up the bay, the wind began
to blow as violently as before, and was attended
with rain; insomuch that we were obliged to bear
away the cable again and lie fast. In the evening,
perceiving that the gale did not abate, and thinking
that it might be some time before an opportunity
of getting higher up presented itself, the commo-
dore was determined to heel the ship in our present
station; and, with that view, caused her to be
moored with a kedge-anchor and hawser. One of
the sailors, in heaving the anchor out of the boat,
was carried overboard by the buoy-rope, and accom-
panied the anchor to the bottom. In this very ha-
zardous situation, he had sufficient presence of mind
to disengage himself, and come up to the surface
of the water, where he was immediately taken up,
with a dangerous fracture in one of his legs. Early
the following morning we heeled the ship in order
to stop the leak; which, on ripping off the sheath-

ing, was found to be in the seams. While the carpenters were employed in this business, others of our people filled the water-casks at a stream not far from our station. The wind had by this time considerably abated; but the weather was hazy, with rain. The Americans paid us another visit this morning: those who came off first, were in small canoes; others arrived afterwards in large ones. In one of these great canoes were twenty women and one man, besides several children.

On Saturday the 16th, towards the evening, the weather cleared up, and we then found ourselves encompassed with land. Our station was on the eastern side of the Sound, in a place distinguished by the appellation of Snug Corner Bay. Captain Cook, accompanied by some of his officers, went to take a survey of the head of it; and they found that it was sheltered from all winds, and had a muddy bottom at the depth of from seven to three fathoms. The land near the shore is low; partly wooded, and partly clear. The clear ground was covered with snow, but very little remained in the woods. The summits of the hills in the neighbourhood were covered with wood; but those that were at a greater distance inland, had the appearance of naked rocks involved in snow.

The leak of the Resolution being at length stopped, we weighed anchor on the 17th, at four in the morning, and steered a northwest course, with a gentle breeze at east northeast. Soon after we had made sail, the Americans visited us again, seemingly with no other view than to gratify their curiosity, for they did not enter into any traffic with us.— When we had reached the north-western point of

the car-
ers of our
t far from
consider-
with rain.
morning :
canoes ;
In one of
one man,
ning, the
ourselves
as on the
inguished
Captain
, went to
ey found
d a mud.
three fa-
; partly
ound was
ed in the
ighbour-
that were
arance of
gth stop-
our in the
e, with a
er we had
seeming-
r curiosi-
ith us.—
point of

the arm wherein we had anchored, we observed that the flood-tide came into the inlet by the same channel through which we had entered. This circumstance did not much contribute to the probability of a passage to the north through the inlet, though it did not make entirely against it. After we had passed the point just mentioned, we met with much foul ground, and many sunken rocks. The wind now failed us, and was succeeded by calms and variable light airs, so that we had some difficulty in extricating ourselves from the danger that threatened us. At last, however, about one o'clock, we cast anchor in about thirteen fathoms water, under the eastern shore, about four leagues to the northward of our last station. Though the weather in the morning had been very hazy, it cleared up afterwards, so as to afford us a distinct view of all the surrounding land, particularly towards the north where it appeared to close. This gave us but little hope of meeting with a passage that way. That he might be enabled to form a better judgment, Captain Cook sent Mr Gore, with two armed boats, to examine the northern arm; and at the same time dispatched the master, with two other boats, to survey another arm that seemed to incline towards the east. Both of them returned at night. The master informed the commodore, that the arm to which he had been sent communicated with that we had last quitted, and that one side of it was formed by a cluster of islands. Mr Gore reported, that he had seen the entrance of an arm which, he thought, extended a very considerable way to the north-eastward, and by which a passage might probably be found. On the other hand, Mr Roberts, one of the

mates, who had accompanied Mr Gore on this occasion, gave it as his opinion, that they saw the head of this arm. The variation of these two opinions, and the circumstance before mentioned of the flood-tide entering the inlet from the southward, rendered the existence of a passage this way extremely uncertain. Captain Cook therefore determined to employ no more time in seeking a passage in a place that afforded so small a prospect of success, particularly as the wind was now become favourable for getting out to sea.

The next morning, about three o'clock, we weighed, and made sail to the southward down the inlet, with a light northerly breeze. We met with the same broken ground as on the preceding day, but soon extricated ourselves from it. We were enabled to shorten our way out to sea by discovering another passage into this inlet, to the southwest of that by which we entered. It is separated from the other by an island that extends eighteen leagues in the direction of southwest and northeast, to which Captain Cook gave the appellation of Montagu Island.

There are several islands in this south-western channel. Those which are situate in the entrance, next the open sea, are elevated and rocky. Those that are within are low; and as they were totally free from snow, and covered with wood and verdure, they were, for this reason, denominated Green Islands.

The wind, at two o'clock in the afternoon, veered to the southwest, and southwest by south, which subjected us to the necessity of plying. We first stretched over to within the distance of two

on this oc-
w the head
o, opinions,
the flood-
ed, render-
extremely un-
ned to em-
in a place
cess, parti-
ourable for

clock, we
d down the
e met with
eding day,

We were
y discover-
southwest
rated from
een leagues
rtheast, to
n of Mon-

ath-western
e entrance,
y. Those
ere totally
nd verdure,
ted Green

noon, veer-
by south,
ying. We
ce of two

miles of the eastern shore, and tacked in about fifty-three fathoms. As we stood back to Montagu Island, we discovered a ledge of rocks, some under water, and others above the surface. We afterwards met with some others towards the middle of the channel. These rocks rendering it unsafe to ply during the night, we spent it in standing off and on under Montagu Island; for the depth of water was so great that we could not cast anchor. The next morning at break of day we steered for the channel between the Green Islands and Montagu Island, which is about two leagues and a half in breadth. The wind was inconsiderable the whole day, and about eight o'clock in the evening we had a perfect calm, when we let go our anchors at the depth of twenty-one fathoms, over a muddy bottom, about the distance of two miles from Montagu Island. After the calm had continued till ten o'clock the succeeding morning, a slight breeze sprung up from the north, with which we again weighed and made sail. Having got out into the open sea by six in the evening, we discovered that the coast trended west by south as far as the eye could possibly reach.

The inlet which we had now quitted was distinguished by Captain Cook with the name of Prince William's Sound. From what we saw of it, it seems to occupy at least one degree and a half of latitude, and two degrees of longitude, exclusive of the branches or arms, with whose extent we are unacquainted. The natives whom we saw were, in general, of a middling stature, though many of them were under it. They were square, or strong chested, with short thick necks, and large broad visages,

which were, for the most part, rather flat. The most disproportioned part of their body appeared to be their heads, which were of great magnitude. Their teeth were of a tolerable whiteness, broad, well set, and equal in size. Their noses had full round points, turned up at the tip; and their eyes, though not small, were scarcely proportioned to the largeness of their faces. They had black hair, which was strong, straight, and thick. Their beards were in general thin or deficient; but the hairs growing about the lips of those who have them were bristly or stiff, and often of a brownish colour; and some of the elderly men had large, thick, straight beards.

Though, for the most part, they agree in the formation of their persons, and the largeness of their heads, the variety in their features is considerable. Very few, however, can be said to be handsome, though their countenance usually indicates frankness, vivacity, and good-nature; and yet some of them showed a reserve and sullenness in their aspect. The faces of some of the women are agreeable; and many of them, but principally the younger ones, may easily be distinguished from the other sex by the superior delicacy of their features. The complexion of some of the females, and of the children, is white, without any mixture of red. Many of the men, whom we saw naked, had rather a swarthy cast, which was scarcely the effect of any stain, as it is not their custom to paint their bodies.

The men, women, and children of this Sound, are all clothed in the same manner. Their ordinary dress is a sort of close frock, or rather robe, which sometimes reaches only to the knees, but ge-

neral
part,
sleeve
comp
the 2
&c.
side o
made
on th
we al
bling
Sound
are se
fringe
same
of the
the m
their
this,
some
whale
with
our g
drawn
down
with
draw
hole i
ventee
the m
throu
const
comm

flat. The
appeared
magnitude.
ess, broad,
s had full
their eyes,
ned to the
black hair,
k. Their
; but the
who have
brownish
had large,
ree in the
rgeness of
s consider-
be hand-
indicates
yet some
in their as-
are agree-
the young-
the other
ures. The
of the chil-
d. Many
er a swar-
any stain,
dies.
is Sound,
eir ordina-
ther robe,
es, but ge-

nerally down to the ankles. It has, at the upper part, a hole just sufficient to admit the head, with sleeves reaching to the wrist. These frocks are composed of the skins of various animals; such as the grey fox, racoon, pine-martin, sea-otter, seal, &c. and they are commonly worn with the hairy side outwards. Some of the natives have their frocks made of the skins of fowls with only the down left on them, which they glue upon other substances; we also saw one or two woollen garments, resembling those of the inhabitants of King George's Sound. At the seams, where the different skins are sewed together, they are usually adorned with fringes or tassels of narrow thongs cut out of the same skins. There is a sort of cape or collar to a few of them, and some have a hood; but the other is the most customary form, and appears to constitute their whole dress in fair weather. They put over this, when it is rainy, another frock, made with some degree of ingenuity from the intestines of whales, or of some other large animal, prepared with such skill as to resemble, in a great measure, our gold-beater's leaf. It is formed so as to be drawn tight round the neck, and its sleeves extend down to the wrist, round which they are fastened with a string. When they are in their canoes, they draw the skirts of this frock over the rim of the hole in which they sit, so that the water is prevented from entering. At the same time it keeps the men dry upwards, for no water can penetrate through it. It is apt to crack or break, if it is not constantly kept moist. This frock, as well as the common one made of skins, is nearly similar to the

dress of the natives of Greenland, as described by Crantz *.

Though the inhabitants of this inlet, in general, do not cover their legs or feet, yet some of them wear a kind of skin stockings, reaching half way up their thighs. Few of them are without mittens for their hands, formed from the skins of a bear's paws. Those who wear any thing on their heads, resembled, in this particular, the people of Nootka, having high truncated conical caps, composed of straw, and sometimes of wood.

The hair of the men is commonly cropped round the forehead and neck, but the females suffer it to grow long; and the greatest part of them tie a lock of it on the crown, while a few club it behind, after our method. Both the men and women perforate their ears with several holes, about the outer and lower part of the edge, wherein they suspend small bunches of beads. They also perforate the *septum* of the nose, through which they often thrust the quill-feathers of birds, or little bending ornaments, made of a tubulous shelly substance, strung on a stiff cord, of the length of three or four inches, which give them a ridiculous and grotesque appearance. But the most extraordinary ornamental fashion, adopted by some of the natives of both sexes, is their having the under lip cut quite through length-wise, rather below the swelling part. This incision frequently exceeds two inches in length, and either by its natural retraction while the wound is still fresh, or by the repetition of some artificial management, assumes the appearance

* Crantz's History of Greenland, Vol. I. p. 136—138.

and shape of lips, and becomes sufficiently large to admit the tongue through. This happened to be the case, when a person with his under lip thus slit was first seen by one of our sailors, who immediately exclaimed, that the man had two mouths, which, indeed, it greatly resembles. They fix in this artificial mouth a flat, narrow kind of ornament, made principally out of a solid shell or bone, cut into small narrow pieces, like teeth, almost down to the base, or thick part, which has, at each end, a projecting bit, that serves to support it when put into the divided lip, the cut part then appearing outwards. Some of them only perforate the lower lip into separate holes, on which occasion the ornament consists of the same number of distinct shelly studs, the points of which are thrust through these holes, and their heads appear within the lip, not unlike another row of teeth under their natural ones.

Such are the native ornaments of these people. But we observed among them many beads of European manufacture, chiefly of a pale blue colour, which are hung in their ears, or about their caps, or are joined to their lip ornaments, which have a little hole drilled in each of the points to which they are fastened, and others to them, till they sometimes even hang as low as the points of the chin. In this last case, however, they cannot remove them with such facility; for, with respect to their own lip ornaments, they can take them out with their tongue at pleasure. They likewise wear bracelets of beads made of a shelly substance, or others of a cylindrical form, composed of a substance resembling amber. And they are, in ge-

neral, so fond of ornaments of some kind or other, that they fix any thing in their perforated lip; for one of them appeared with two of our iron nails projecting like prongs from it; and another man attempted to put a large brass button into it.

The men often paint their faces of a black colour, and of a bright red, and sometimes of a bluish or leaden hue; but not in any regular figure. The women puncture or stain the chin with black, that comes to a point in each of their cheeks; a custom similar to which is in vogue among the Greenland females, as we are informed by Crantz. The bodies of these people are not painted, which may probably be owing to the scarcity of materials for that purpose; all the colours which they brought for sale, being in very small quantities. Upon the whole, we have in no country seen savages who take more pains than these do, to ornament, or rather (as we should think) to disfigure their persons.

Their canoes are of two sorts, the one large and open, the other small and covered. We have mentioned before, that there were twenty women and one man, besides children, in one of their large boats. Captain Cook having attentively examined this, and compared its construction with Crantz's description of the great, or woman's boat, in Greenland, found that they were built in the same mode, with no other difference than in the form of the head and stern, particularly of the former, which somewhat resembles a whale's head. The framing consists of slender pieces of wood; and the outside is composed of the skins of seals, or other sea-animals, stretched over the wood. The small canoes of these people are constructed nearly of the same form and

materi
lander
tioned
ved lik
in pro
quima

The
fishing
lander
headed
pointe
by me
with a
the da
of one
of woo
force.
jacket
togeth
though

It serv
may,
worn

We
habita
in the
of us
sils, th
oval w
a cylin
consist
ner of
tened
small

or other,
rated lip;
iron nails
er man at-
it.

ack colour,
a bluish or
ure. The
black, that
a custom
Greenland
The bodies
y probably
that pur-
t for sale,
he whole,
take more
her (as we

large and
have men-
omen and
heir large
examined
n Crantz's
in Green-
me mode,
f the head
ich some-
ming con-
outside is
a-animal,
s of these
form and

materials with those of the Esquimaux and Green-landers. Some of these, as we have already men- tioned, carry two persons. Their fore part is cur- ved like the head of a violin; and they are broader in proportion to their length than those of the Es- quimaux.

Their weapons, and implements for hunting and fishing, are the same with those used by the Green-landers and Esquimaux. Many of their spears are beaded with iron, and their arrows are generally pointed with bone. Their larger darts are thrown by means of a piece of wood about a foot long, with a small groove in the middle, which receives the dart: at the bottom is a hole for the reception of one finger, which enables them to grasp the piece of wood much firmer, and to throw with greater force. For defensive armour they have a sort of jacket or coat of mail, formed of laths, fastened together with sinews, which render it very flexible, though it is so close as not to admit a dart or arrow. It serves only to cover the trunk of the body, and may, not improperly, be compared to the stays worn by women.

We had not an opportunity of seeing any of the habitations of the natives, as none of them dwelt in the bay where our ships anchored, or where any of us landed. With respect to their domestic uten- sils, they brought, in their canoes, some round and oval wooden dishes, rather shallow, and others of a cylindrical form, considerably deeper. The sides consisted of one piece, bent round, after the man- ner of our chip-boxes, but thick, and neatly fas- tened with thongs; the bottoms being fixed in with small pegs of wood. Others were somewhat smal-

ler, and of a more elegant figure, not unlike a large oval butter-boat, without any handle, but shallow-er: these were composed of a piece of wood, or some horny substance, and were sometimes neatly carved. They had a number of little square bags made of the same gut with their exterior frocks curiously adorned with very small red feathers interwoven with it, in which were contained several very fine sinews, and bundles of small cord made out of them, plaited with extraordinary ingenuity. They likewise brought some wooden models of their canoes, chequered baskets, wrought so closely as to hold water, and a considerable number of small images, of the length of four or five inches, either of wood or stuffed, which were covered with a piece of fur, and embellished with quill-feathers, with hair fixed on their heads. We could not determine whether these were intended merely as children's toys, or were held in veneration, as representing their deceased friends and relations, and applied to some superstitious purpose. They have many instruments formed of two or three hoops, or concentric pieces of wood, having a cross bar fixed in the middle, by which they are held. To these they fix a number of dried barnacle-shells with threads, which, when shaken, produce a loud noise, and thus serve the purpose of a rattle. This contrivance is probably a substitute for the rattling-bird at King George's Sound.

It is uncertain with what tools their wooden utensils, frames of canoes, &c. are made; the only one that we observed among them being a sort of stone adze, somewhat resembling those of Otaheite, and other islands of the Pacific Ocean. They have

ke a large great quantity of iron knives, some of which are
t shallow rather curved, others straight, and some very small
wood, or pieces, fixed in longish handles, with the blades bent
neatly upwards. They have knives of another sort, some-
square bags, times almost two feet in length, shaped in a great
or frocks, measure like a dagger, with a ridge towards the
others inter middle. They wear these in sheaths of skins,
several very hanging by a thong round their necks, under their
made out of robe or frock. It is probable that they use them
y. They only as weapons, and that their other knives are
of their applied to different purposes. Whatever they have,
closely as is as well made as if they were provided with a com-
r of small plete chest of tools; and their plaiting of sinews,
es, either sewing, and small work on their little bags above
with a piece mentioned, may be said to vie with the neatest
hers, with manufactures found in any part of the globe. Up-
determine on the whole, considering the uncivilized state of
children's the natives of this Sound, their northerly situation,
presenting amidst a country almost continually covered with
applied to snow, and the comparatively wretched materials
many in they have to work with, it appears, that, with re-
s, or con- spect to their skill and invention in all manual
bar fixed operations, they are at least equal to any other
To these people.

th threads, The food that we saw them eat was the flesh of
noise, and some animal, either roasted or broiled, and dried
contrivance fish. Some of the former that was purchased, had
d at King the appearance of bear's flesh. They likewise eat
a larger sort of fern-root, either baked or dressed
t wooden in some other method. Some of us observed them
the only eat freely of a substance, which we imagined was
a sort of the interior part of the pine-bark. Their drink,
Otaheite, in all probability, is water, for, in their canoes,
They have they brought snow in wooden vessels, which they

swallowed by mouthfuls. Their manner of eating is decent and cleanly, for they constantly took care to remove any dirt that might adhere to their food; and though they would sometimes eat the raw fat of some sea-animal, they did not fail to cut it carefully into mouthfuls. Their persons were, to appearance, always clean; and their utensils, in general, were kept in excellent order, as were also their boats.

The language of these people seems difficult to be understood; which is, perhaps, not owing to any confusion or indistinctness in their sounds, but to the various significations which their words bear. For they appeared frequently to make use of the same word on very different occasions; though, probably, if we had a longer intercourse with them, this might have proved to be a mistake on our part. Among the very few words of their language that Mr Anderson was enabled to procure, are the following, viz. *aa*, yes; *keeta*, give me something; *tawak*, keep it; *akashou*, what's the name of that? *namuk*, an ear-ornament; *natoonesbuk*, a sea-otter's skin; *ableu*, a spear; *yaut*, I'll go, or, shall I go? *keelashuk*, guts of which they make jackets; *naema*, give me something by way of exchange, or barter; *whaebai*, shall I keep it; *oonuka*, of, or belonging to me.

Our knowledge of the animals of this part of the American continent, is entirely derived from the skins that were brought by the natives for sale. These were principally of bears, common and pine-martins, sea-otters, seals, racoons, small ermines, foxes, and the whitish cat, or lynx. Among these various skins, the most common were those of ra-

coon
ordin
the
brow
to th
otter
plent
deral
fur,
size
black
prett
white
simp
dark
B
bear,
piece
also
very
than
ing s
head
to us
was
hair,
conje
seal,
skins
small
lour
speck
a few
part

r of eating
r took care
their food ;
he raw fat
cut it care-
ere, to ap-
ls, in gene-
also their

difficult to
wing to any
nds, but to
words bear.
use of the
hough, pro-
h them, this
n our part.
nguage that
are the fol-
something ;
me of that ?
a sea-otter's
shall I go ?
ets ; *naema*,
or barter ;
r belonging

part of the
d from the
es for sale.
n and pine-
all ermines,
mong these
hose of ra-

coons, martins, and sea-otters, which constituted the ordinary dress of these people ; but the skins of the martins, which were in general of a far lighter brown than those of Nootka, were greatly superior to them in point of fineness ; whereas those of the sea-otters, which, as well as the martins, were much more plentiful here than at Nootka, seemed to be considerably inferior in the thickness and fineness of their fur, though they far exceeded them with respect to size ; and were, for the most part, of the glossy black sort. The skins of seals and bears were also pretty common ; and the former were in general white, beautifully spotted with black, or sometimes simply white ; and many of the bears here were of a dark brown hue.

Besides these animals, there is here the white bear, of whose skins the natives brought several pieces, and some complete skins of cubs. There is also the wolverene, or quickhatch, whose skin has very bright colours ; and a larger species of ermine than the common one, varied with brown, and having scarcely any black on its tail. The skin of the head of some very large animal was likewise brought to us, but we could not positively decide what it was ; though, from the colour and shagginess of the hair, and its not resembling any land animal, we conjectured that it might be that of the male ursine seal, or sea bear. But one of the most beautiful skins that fell under our observation, is that of a small animal near a foot in length, of a brown colour on the back, with a number of obscure whitish specks, the sides being of a bluish ash colour, with a few of these specks. The tail is about a third part of the length of the body, and is covered with

whitish hair. This animal is doubtless the same with that which is called by Mr Stæhlin, in his account of the New Northern Archipelago, the spotted field-mouse. But whether it is really of the mouse-kind, or a squirrel, we could not determine, for want of entire skins; though Mr Anderson was inclined to imagine, that it is the same animal which Mr Pennant has described under the appellation of the Casan marmot. The great number of skins that we observed here, denotes the abundance of the various animals we have mentioned; but it is somewhat remarkable, that we neither met with the skins of the mouse, nor of the common species of deer.

With respect to birds, we found here the *halcyon*, or great king-fisher, which had fine bright colours; the shag, the white-headed eagle, and the humming-bird, which often flew about our ships while we lay at anchor, though it can scarcely be supposed to live here during the winter, which must be extremely severe. The water-fowl seen by us were black sea-pyees, with red bills, such as we met with in New-Zealand and Van Diemen's Land; geese, a small sort of duck, nearly resembling that species we saw at Kerguelen's Land, and another sort with which none of us were acquainted. Some of our people who went ashore killed a snipe, a grouse, and some plovers: but though the water-fowl were numerous, particularly the geese and ducks, they were so shy that it was scarce possible to get within shot; in consequence of which, we procured a very inconsiderable supply of them as refreshment. The duck before mentioned is about the size of the common wild-duck, of a deep black,

with
whit
larg
each
the
on t
The
than
men
whic
A
plac
in si
head
ish
deep
unde
nute
land
low-
whic
thei
dusk
male
spot
its
fema
T
the
caug
of a
The
the

the same
in his ac-
the spot-
ally of the
determine,
derson was
mal which
pellation of
f skins that
of the va-
t is some-
with the
species of

the balcony,
nt colours;
the hum-
ships while
ly be sup-
which must
een by us
as we met
n's Land;
bling that
d another
ted. Some
a snipe, a
the water-
geese and
ce possible
which, we
them as re-
d is about
eep black,

with red feet, and a short pointed tail. Its bill is white, tinged towards the point with red, and has a large black spot, almost square, near its base, on each side, where it is also somewhat distended. On the fore-head is a large triangular white spot; and on the hinder part of the neck is one still larger. The colours of the female are considerably duller than those of the male; and it has none of the ornaments of the bill, excepting the two black spots, which are rather obscure.

A species of diver, which seems peculiar to this place, was observed here. It is equal to a partridge in size, and has a short, black, compressed bill. Its head, and the upper part of its neck, are of a brownish black; and the remainder of its body is of a deep brown, obscurely waved with black, except the under part, which is totally of a blackish cast, minutely varied with white. We also found a small land bird, of the finch kind, about the size of a yellow-hammer, but we imagined it to be one of those which change their colour with the season, and with their different migrations. It was at this time of a dusky brown, with a reddish tail; and the supposed male had, on the crown of the head, a large yellow spot, with some varied black on the upper part of its neck; but the latter was on the breast of the female.

The fish that were principally brought to us by the natives for sale, were torsk and halibut; and we caught some sculpins about the ship, with star-fish of a purplish hue, that had sixteen or eighteen rays. The rocks were almost destitute of shell-fish; and the other animal of this tribe that was observed by

us, was a reddish crab, covered with very large spines.

The metals seen by us were iron and copper; both which, but more particularly the former, were in such abundance, as to form the points of numbers of their lances and arrows. The ores which they made use of to paint themselves with, were a brittle, unctuous, red ochre, or iron ore; a pigment of a bright blue, and black lead. Each of these seemed to be very scarce among them.

We observed few vegetables of any kind; and the trees that chiefly grew about this sound, were the Canadian and spruce pine, some of which were of a considerable size.

These people must, doubtless, have received from some more civilized nation, the beads and iron found among them. We were almost certain that we were the first Europeans with whom they had ever had a direct communication; and it remains only to be determined, from what quarter they had procured our manufactures, by intermediate conveyance. And it is more than probable that they had obtained these articles through the intervention of the more inland tribes, either from the settlements about Hudson's Bay, or those on the lakes of Canada, unless we can admit the supposition that the Russians, from Kamtschatka, have already extended their traffic to this distance; or that the natives of their most easterly Fox Islands carry on an intercourse along the coast, with the inhabitants of Prince William's Sound.

With respect to copper, these people, perhaps, procure it themselves, or, at most, it passes to them through few hands; for, when we offered any of it

by way
in suffi
their w
as they
was no
If, h
ed wit
interme
remark
supplie
sea-ott
peared
Hudson
the cas
account
great
went E
so far,
skins,
more t
use of
others,
being
they r
ments.

Lea
the 20
a gent
four o
soon a
We co
sed a
and th
discove

by way of barter, they used to express its being in sufficient plenty among them, by pointing to their weapons; as if they meant to intimate, that, as they had so much copper of their own, there was no occasion for increasing their stock.

If, however, the natives of this inlet are furnished with European commodities by means of the intermediate traffic to the eastern coast, it is rather remarkable that they should never, in return, have supplied the more inland Indians with some of their sea-otter skins, which would undoubtedly have appeared at some time or other in the environs of Hudson's Bay. But that does not appear to be the case; and the only method by which we can account for this, must be by considering the very great distance, which, though it might not prevent European articles of commerce from coming so far, as being so uncommon, might hinder the skins, which are common, from passing through more than two or three tribes, who might make use of them for their own clothing, and send others, which they reckoned of inferior value, as being of their own animals, towards the east, till they reach the traders at the European settlements.

Leaving Prince William's Sound, on Wednesday the 20th of May, we steered to the southwest, with a gentle breeze, which was succeeded by a calm at four o'clock the next morning, and that calm was soon after followed by a breeze from southwest. We continued to stretch to the southwest, and passed a lofty promontory, in the latitude of $59^{\circ} 10'$, and the longitude of $207^{\circ} 45'$. It having been discovered on Princess Elizabeth's birth-day, cap-

tain. Cook gave it the name of *Cape Elizabeth*. As we could see no land beyond it, we flattered ourselves that it was the western extremity of the continent; but we were soon convinced that we were mistaken, fresh land appearing in sight, bearing west southwest. The wind had now increased to a strong gale, and forced us to a considerable distance from the coast. On the 22d, in the afternoon, the gale abated, and we stood for Cape Elizabeth, which, about noon the next day, bore west, distant ten leagues. New land was then seen, bearing southwest, which, it was imagined, connected Cape Elizabeth with the land we had seen towards the west.

We stood to the southward till the next day at noon, at which time we were about three leagues from the coast which we had seen on the 22d. In this situation it formed a point that bore west-northwest. More land was discovered, extending to the southward; on which was seen a ridge of mountains, with summits covered with snow, behind the first land, which we supposed to be an island, there appearing on it but an inconsiderable quantity of snow. The latitude of this point of land is $58^{\circ} 15'$, and its longitude $207^{\circ} 42'$. And, by what the commodore could gather from Beer-*ing's Voyage and Chart*, he supposed it to be what he called Cape St Hermogenes. But the account of that voyage, as well as the chart, is so extremely inaccurate, that it is almost impossible to discover any one place which that navigator either saw or touched at. The commodore, indeed, was by no means certain, that the bay which he had

named
anchorage

In
pointed
no land
makes
ed by
of isla
which
confirm
ed the
northw
proceed

By
ed off
of the
ed alo
Cape
league
by a c
rocks
north
the r
water

At
tant e
tending
last d
Bank
41', a
tuatio
which
with
it, w

abeth. As
tered our-
f the con-
t we were
t, bearing
ceased to a
erable dis-
the after-
for Cape
day, bore
then seen,
d, connec-
d seen to.

named after Beering was the place where he had anchored.

In the chart above mentioned, a space is here pointed out where Beering is supposed to have seen no land. This favoured Mr Stæhlin's account, who makes Cape St Hermogenes, and the land discovered by Beering to the southwest of it, to be a cluster of islands, and that St Hermogenes is one of those which are destitute of wood. This appeared to be confirmed by what we now saw, and we entertained the pleasing hopes of finding here a passage northward, without being under the necessity of proceeding any farther to the southwest.

By variable light airs and calms we were detained off the Cape till two o'clock in the morning of the 25th, when a breeze springing up, we steered along the coast, and perceived that the land of Cape St Hermogenes was an island, about six leagues in circumference, separated from the coast by a channel of about one league in breadth. Some rocks lie above water, a league and a half to the north of this island, and on the northeast side of the rocks we had from twenty to thirty fathoms water.

About noon St Hermogenes bore southeast, distant eight leagues, the land to the northwest extending from south half west to near west. In the last direction it ended in a low point, named *Point Banks*. The ship was at this time in the latitude of $58^{\circ} 41'$, and in the longitude of $207^{\circ} 44'$. In this situation the land was in sight, bearing northwest, which, it was imagined, connected Cape Elizabeth with this southwest land. When we approached it, we saw it was a group of high islands and

rocks, and consequently unconnected with any other land. From the nakedness of their appearance, they were denominated the *Barren Isles*: they are situate in the latitude of 59° , three leagues distant from Cape Elizabeth, and five from Point Banks.

We intended to have passed through one of the channels by which these islands are divided, but, a strong current setting against us, we went to the leeward of them all. The weather, which had been thick and hazy, cleared up towards the evening, and we perceived a very lofty promontory, whose elevated summit appeared above the clouds, forming two exceedingly high mountains. The commodore named this promontory *Cape Douglas*, in honour of his friend Dr Douglas, Canon of Windsor. Its latitude is $58^{\circ} 56'$, and its longitude $206^{\circ} 10'$, twelve leagues from Point Banks, and ten to the westward of the Barren Isles.

The coast seemed to form a large deep bay, between this point and Cape Douglas, which, from our observing some smoke upon Point Banks, received the name of *Smoky Bay*. On the 26th, at day-break, being to the northward of the Barren Isles, we perceived more land, extending from Cape Douglas to the north. It consisted of a chain of very high mountains, one of which, being much more conspicuous than the rest, obtained the name of *Mount St Augustin*.

We were not discouraged at perceiving this land, supposing it to be wholly unconnected with the land of Cape Elizabeth. We also expected to find a passage to the northwest, between Cape Douglas and Mount St Augustin. It was, indeed, ima-

gined,
consist
many
accord
Flat
gale at
till eig
that w
mits o
which
on acc
land w
of the
ever
contin
that h
and hi
to sati
Mo
west,
heigh
an isl
ascert
done
under
noon.
Be
name
peare
this t
three
T
rected

with any
their appear-
Barren Isles :
three leagues
from Point

one of the
led, but, a
rent to the
h had been
the evening,
ory, whose
uds, form-
the commo-
las, in ho-
f Windsor.
206° 10',
ten to the

ep bay, be-
which, from
Banks, re-
the 26th, at
the Barren
from Cape
a chain of
eing much
d the name

this land,
with the
ted to find
e Douglas
deed, ima-

gined, that the land to the north of Cape Douglas consisted of a group of islands, separated by so many channels, any of which we might have chosen, according to the direction of the wind.

Flattered with these ideas, and having a fresh gale at north-northeast, we stood to the northwest, till eight o'clock, when we were fully convinced, that what we had supposed to be islands, were summits of mountains, connected by the lower land, which we could not perceive at a greater distance on account of the haziness of the horizon. This land was covered wholly with snow, from the tops of the mountains down to the sea-beach, and had in every other respect the appearance of a great continent. Captain Cook was now fully convinced that he should discover no passage by this inlet ; and his persevering in the search of it, was more to satisfy others than to confirm his own opinion.

Mount St Augustin, at this time, bore north-west, about three leagues distant. It is of vast height, and of a conical figure ; but whether it be an island, or part of the continent, is not yet ascertained. Perceiving that nothing was to be done to the west, we stood over to Cape Elizabeth, under which we fetched at about five in the afternoon.

Between Cape Elizabeth and a lofty promontory, named *Cape Bede* *, is a bay, in which there appeared to be two snug harbours. We stood into this bay, and might have anchored there in twenty-three fathoms water ; but, the commodore having

* This name, and that of Mount St Augustin, were directed by our calendar.

no such intention, we tacked, and stood to the westward, with a very strong gale, accompanied with rain and hazy weather. The gale abated the next morning, and about three o'clock in the afternoon the weather cleared up, Cape Douglas bearing southwest by west, and the depth of water bearing forty fathoms, over a rocky bottom.

The coast from Cape Bede trended northeast by east, with a chain of mountains inland, in the same direction. On the coast the land was woody and there appeared to be some commodious harbours. We had the mortification, however, to discover low land in the middle of the inlet, extending from north-northeast to northeast by east; but, as it was supposed to be an island, we were not much discouraged. About this time we steered, with a light breeze, to the westward of this low land, as in that direction, there was no appearance of obstruction. Our soundings were from thirty to twenty-five fathoms.

In the morning of the 28th, having but little wind, the ship drove to the southward, and, in order to stop her, we dropped a kedge-anchor, with an eight-inch hawser. But, in bringing the ship, we lost both that and the anchor. We brought the ship up, however, with one of the bowers, and spent a considerable part of the day in sweeping for them, but without effect. We were now in the latitude of $59^{\circ} 51'$; the low land extended from northeast to southeast, the nearest part distant about two leagues. The land on the western shore was distant about seven leagues. A strong tide set to the southward out of the inlet; it was the ebb, and ran almost four knots in an hour. At ten o'clock

stood to the northeast by the land. Great quantities of sea-weed, and some drift-wood, were taken out with the tide. Though the water had become thick, and resembled that in rivers, we were encouraged to proceed, by finding it as salt as the ocean, even at low-water. Three knots was the strength of the flood-tide, and the stream continued to run up till four in the afternoon.

Having a calm the whole day, we moved with a light breeze at east, at eight o'clock in the evening, and stood to the north up the inlet. The wind, soon after, veered to the north, increased to a fresh gale, and blew in squalls, with some rain. But this did not hinder us from plying up while the flood continued, which was till the next morning at near five o'clock. We had from thirty-five to twenty-four fathoms water. We anchored about two leagues from the eastern shore, where our latitude was $60^{\circ} 8'$; some low land, which we supposed to be an island, lying under the western shore, distant between three and four leagues.

The weather having now become fair and clear, we could see any land within our horizon, when nothing was visible to obstruct our progress in a northeast direction. But a ridge of mountains appeared on each side, rising behind each other, without any separation. Captain Cook supposed it to be low-water about ten o'clock, but the ebb ran down till almost twelve. Two columns of smoke were now visible on the eastern shore, a certain sign that inhabitants were near. We weighed at one in the afternoon, and plied up under double-reefed topsails, having a strong gale at northeast.

We stretched over to the western shore, intending to have taken shelter till the gale should cease; but falling suddenly from forty fathoms water into twelve, and seeing the appearance of a shoal, we stretched back to the eastward and anchored in nineteen fathoms water under the eastern shore, the northwest part of which ended in a bluff point.

On the 30th of May, about two o'clock in the morning, we weighed anchor again, the gale having much abated, but still continuing contrary. We plied up till near seven, and then anchored in nineteen fathoms water, under the shore to the eastward.

Two canoes, with a man in each, came off to the ship about noon, nearly from that part where we had seen the smoke the day before. It cost them some labour to paddle across the strong tide, and they hesitated a little before they dared to venture to approach us. One of them was very loquacious, but to no purpose, for we could not understand a syllable he said; while he was talking, he kept pointing continually to the shore, which we supposed to be an invitation for us to go thither. Captain Cook made them a present of a few trifles, which he conveyed to them from the quarter gallery.

These people strongly resembled those we had seen in Prince William's Sound, both in dress and person: their canoes were also constructed in the same manner. One of our visitors seemed to have no beard, and his face was painted of a jet black; the other, who was older, was not painted, but he had a large beard, and a countenance like the

comm
was t
whenc
inhabi

As
quitted
with a
mentio
shore,
about
ous tid
ignora
stream
or rock
to be t
mistak

We
ing to
fathom
upward
o'clock
ing nor
there d

Till
degree
was as
the ma
selves.
ebb, w
whence
river, a
cation
ceeded
proofs,

common sort of the people in the Sound. Smoke was this day seen upon the flat western shore, whence we inferred that these lower spots only are inhabited.

As we weighed when the flood made, the canoes quitted us. We stood over to the western shore, with a fresh gale, and fetched under the point above mentioned. This, with the point on the opposite shore, contracted the breadth of the channel to about four leagues, through which ran a prodigious tide. It had a terrible appearance, as we were ignorant whether the water was thus agitated by the stream, or by the dashing of the waves against sands or rocks. Meeting with no shoal, we concluded it to be the former, but we afterwards found ourselves mistaken.

We kept the western shore aboard, that appearing to be the safest. We had a depth of thirteen fathoms near the shore, and, two or three miles off, upwards of forty. In the evening, about eight o'clock, we anchored under a point of land, bearing north-east, distant about three leagues, and lay there during the ebb.

Till we arrived here the water retained an equal degree of saltness, both at high and low water, and was as salt as that which is in the ocean, but now the marks of the river evidently displayed themselves. The water, which was taken up at this ebb, was much fresher than any we had tasted, whence we concluded that we were in a large river, and not in a streight which had a communication with the northern seas. But, having proceeded thus far, we were anxious to have stronger proofs, and, therefore, in the morning of the 31st

we weighed with the flood, and drove up with the tide, having but little wind.

We were attended, about eight o'clock, by many of the natives, in one large canoe, and several smaller ones. The latter had only one person on board each; and some of the paddles had a blade at each end, like those of the Esquimaux. Men, women and children, were contained in the large canoes. At some distance from the ship they exhibited, on a long pole, a kind of leathern frock, which we interpreted to be a sign of their peaceable intentions. They conveyed this frock into the ship, as an acknowledgment for some trifles which the commander had given them.

No difference appeared either in the persons or dress, or canoes of these people, and the natives of Prince William's Sound, except that the small canoes were not so large as those of the Sound, and carried only one man.

We bartered with them for some of their furs, dresses, made of the skins of animals, particularly those of sea-otters, martins, and hares: we also had a few of their darts, and a supply of salmon and halibut. We gave them, in exchange for these some old clothes, beads, and pieces of iron.

They were already possessed of large iron knives and glass beads of a sky-blue colour, such as we saw among the inhabitants of Prince William's Sound. The latter, as well as those which they received of us, they seemed to value highly. But they were particularly earnest in asking for large pieces of iron, to which they gave the name of *goone*, though with them, as well as with their neighbours in the Sound, one word seemed to have many sig-

up with the
ifications. Their language is certainly the same,
the words *oonaka*, *keeta*, and *naema*, and a few
others which were frequently used in Prince Wil-
liam's Sound, were also commonly used by this
new tribe. After passing about two hours be-
tween the two ships, they retired to the western
shore.

We anchored at nine o'clock, in sixteen fathoms
water, and almost two leagues from the western
shore, the ebb being already begun. It ran but
three knots an hour at its greatest strength, and
fell, after we had anchored, twenty-one feet upon a
perpendicular. The weather was alternately clear
and misty, with drizzling rain. When it was clear,
we perceived low land between the mountains on
the eastern shore, bearing east from the station of
the ships, which we concluded to be islands be-
tween us and the main land. We also beheld low
land to the northward, which appeared to extend
from the mountains on one side to those on the
other; and, at low water, large shoals were seen,
stretching out from this low land, from some of
which we were not far distant. We doubted, from
these appearances, whether the inlet did not take
an easterly direction through the above opening,
or whether that opening was only a branch of it,
the main channel continuing its northern direction.
The chain of mountains on each side of it strongly
countenanced the latter supposition.

To be satisfied of these particulars, captain Cook
dispatched two boats, and, when the flood-tide
made, followed with the two ships; but it being a
dead calm, and having a strong tide, we anchored.
After driving about ten miles. At the lowest of

the ebb, the water at and near the surface was perfectly fresh, though retaining a considerable degree of saltness if taken above a foot below it. We had this and many other convincing proofs of its being a river; such as thick muddy water, low shores, trees, and rubbish of various kinds, floating backwards and forwards with the tide. In the afternoon we received another visit from the natives, in several canoes, who trafficked considerably with our people, without so much as attempting any dishonest action.

At two o'clock in the morning of the first of June, the master, who commanded the two boats, returned, informing us that he had found the inlet, or river, contracted to one league in breadth, and that it took a northerly course through low land on each side. He advanced about three leagues through this narrow part, which he found from twenty to seventeen fathoms deep. While the stream ran down, the water was perfectly fresh, but it became brackish when it ran up, and very much so towards high-water.

He went ashore upon an island, between this branch and that to the east, and saw some currant bushes, and some other fruit trees and bushes that were unknown to him. About three leagues to the northward of this search, he saw another separation in the eastern chain of mountains, through which he supposed it probable the river took a northeast direction; but this, perhaps, was only another branch, and the main channel continued in a northern direction between the two chains of mountains.

The hopes of finding a passage were no longer entertained; but as the ebb was spent, and we were unable to return against the tide, we took the advantage of the latter, to get a closer view of the eastern branch, in order to determine whether the low land on the east was an island or not. For this purpose we weighed with the first of the flood, and stood over for the eastern shore. At eight o'clock a breeze sprung up in an opposite direction to our course, so that we despaired of reaching the entrance of the river. The commodore, therefore, dispatched two boats, under the command of Lieutenant King, to make such observations as might enable us to form some tolerable idea of the nature of the river.

We anchored, about ten o'clock, in nine fathoms water. The commodore, observing the strength of the tide to be so great that the boats could not make head against it, made a signal for them to return before they had proceeded half way to the entrance of the river. The chief knowledge obtained by this tide's work, was, that all the low land, which we imagined to be an island, was one continued tract from the great river to the foot of the mountains, terminating at the south entrance of this eastern branch, which the commodore denominated the *River Turnagain*. The low land begins again on the north side of this river, and extends from the foot of the mountains to the banks of the great river, forming, before the river Turnagain, a large bay, having from twelve to five fathoms water.

After entering the bay the flood set very strong into the river Turnagain, and the ebb came out

still stronger, the water falling twenty feet upon a perpendicular. From these circumstances, it plainly appeared that a passage was not to be expected by this side river, any more than by the main branch. But, as the water at ebb, though much fresher, retained a considerable degree of saltness, it is probable that both these branches are navigable by ships much farther; and that a very extensive inland communication lies open, by means of this river and its several branches. We had traced it to the latitude of $61^{\circ} 30'$, and the longitude of 210° , which is upwards of seventy leagues from its entrance, and saw no appearance of its source.

The time we spent in the discovery of this great river * ought not to be regretted, if it should hereafter prove useful to the present, or any future age. But the delay, thus occasioned, was an essential loss to us, who had an object of greater magnitude in view. The season was far advanced; and it was now evident that the continent of North America extended much farther to the west, than we had reason to expect from the most approved charts. The Commodore, however, had the satisfaction to reflect, that, if he had not examined this very large river, speculative fabricators of geography would have ventured to assert, that it had a communication with the sea to the north, or with Hudson's or Baffin's Bay to the east; and it would probably have been marked on future maps of the world, with as much appearance of precision, as the imaginary straits of de Fuca and de Fonte.

* Captain Cook having here left a blank, Lord Sandwich very judiciously directed it to be called *Cook's River*.

Mr
two ar
land o
was to
to tak
was als
taining
wherec
date o
were
but w
ensued
necessa
where
tance
Point
On
dore,
eichte
extend
nify t
him t
King
quets
queste
them
and t
walk
social
Th
pieces
Diac
one o
imme

Mr King was again sent in the afternoon with two armed boats, with orders from captain Cook to land on the southeast side of the river, where he was to display the flag; and, in his Majesty's name, to take possession of the country and the river. He was also ordered to bury a bottle in the earth, containing some English coin of 1772, and a paper, whereon were written the names of our ships, and the date of our discovery. The ships, in the mean time, were got under sail. The wind blew fresh easterly, but we had not been long under way before a calm ensued; and the flood-tide meeting us, we found it necessary to anchor in six fathoms water; the point where Mr King landed bearing south, at the distance of two miles. This point of land was named *Point Possession*.

On Mr King's return, he informed the Commodore, that when he approached the shore, he saw eighteen or twenty of the natives with their arms extended; an attitude, he supposed, meant to signify their peaceable disposition, and to convince him that they were without weapons. Seeing Mr King and his attendants land, and observing muskets in their hands, they were alarmed, and requested (by expressive signs) that they would lay them down. This was immediately complied with, and then Mr King and his party were permitted to walk up to them, when they appeared to be very sociable and chearful.

They had with them several dogs, and a few pieces of fresh salmon. Mr Law, surgeon of the *Discovery*, happening to be of the party, purchased one of the dogs, and taking it towards the boat, immediately shot it dead. At this they seemed

exceedingly surprised ; and not thinking themselves safe in such company, they walked away ; but it presently appeared, that they had concealed their spears and other weapons in the bushes close behind them. Mr King informed us, that the ground was swampy, and the soil poor and light. It however produced some pines, alders, birch, and willows ; some rose and currant bushes, and a little grass ; but there was not a plant in flower to be seen.

When it was high-water we weighed anchor, and, with a faint breeze, stood over to the west shore, where we anchored early the next morning, on account of the return of the flood. Presently after we were visited by several of the natives in canoes, who bartered their skins, and afterwards parted with their garments, many of them returning perfectly naked. Among others they brought a great quantity of the skins of white rabbits and red foxes, but only two or three of those of otters. We also purchased some pieces of halibut and salmon. They gave iron the preference to every thing we offered them in exchange. The lip-ornaments were less in fashion among them than at Prince William's Sound ; but those which pass through the nose were worn frequent, and, in general, considerably longer. They had likewise more embroidered work on their garments, quivers, knife-cases, and many other articles.

We weighed at half past ten, and plied down the river with a gentle breeze at south ; when, by the inattention of the man at the lead, the Resolution struck, and stuck upon a bank, nearly in the middle of the river. It is pretty certain that this bank occasioned that strong agitation of the stream, with

which
the r
bout
bank

W
Cook
We
almo
five c
in, th
mage
stood
in de
still u

A
ebb ;
June
the
point
sited
the m
ly ac
quant
us for
of it
great

Th
enteri
perce
side.
high
volcan
the r
smok

themselves
ay; but it
ealed their
lose behind
ground was
it however
l willows;
ttle grass;
seen.

ed anchor,
o the west
c morning,
Presently
tives in ca-

wards part-
urning per-
ght a great
l red foxes,

We also
non. They
we offered
were less in

William's
e nose were
bly longer,
rk on their
other ar-

d down the
n, by the
Resolution
n the mid-
t this bank
ream, with

which we were so much surprised when turning up the river. We had twelve feet depth of water about the ship, at the lowest of the ebb, but the bank was dry in other parts.

When the Resolution came aground, captain Cook made a signal for the Discovery to anchor. We were afterwards informed, that she had been almost ashore on the west side of the bank. About five o'clock in the afternoon, as the flood-tide came in, the ship floated off without sustaining any damage, or occasioning the least trouble. We then stood over to the west shore, where we anchored, in deep water, to wait for the ebb, the wind being still unfavourable to us.

At ten o'clock at night we weighed with the ebb; and, about five the next morning, (the 3d of June) the tide being finished, we cast anchor on the west shore, about two miles below the bluff point. When we were in this station, we were visited by many of the natives, who attended us all the morning; and, indeed, their company was highly acceptable to us, as they brought with them a quantity of fine salmon, which they exchanged with us for some of our trifles. Several hundred weight of it was procured for the two ships, and the greatest part of it was split, and ready for drying.

The mountains now, for the first time after our entering the river, were free from clouds, and we perceived a volcano in one of those on the western side. Its latitude is $60^{\circ} 23'$; and it is the first high mountain north of Mount St Augustin. The volcano is near the summit, and on that part of the mountain next the river. It emits a white smoke, but no fire. The wind continuing souther-

ly, we still tided it down the river ; and, on the morning of the 5th, arriving at the place where we had lost our kedge-anchor, we attempted, though unsuccessfully, to recover it.

Before our departure from this place, we were again visited by some of the natives, in six canoes, from the eastern shore. For half an hour they remained at a small distance from the ships, gazing at them with a kind of silent surprise, without uttering a syllable to us, or to each other. At length they grew courageous, came along-side, and began to barter with us ; nor did they leave us till they had parted with their skins and salmon, which were the only articles they had brought to traffic with.

It may not be unnecessary to remark, that all the people we had seen in this river had a striking resemblance, in every particular, to those who inhabit Prince William's Sound, but differed most essentially from those of Nootka, as well in their persons as their language.

The points of their spears and knives are made of iron ; some of the former, indeed, are made of copper. Their spears resemble our spontoons ; and their knives, for which they have sheaths, are of a considerable length. Except these, and a few glass beads, every thing we saw amongst them was of their own manufacture. We have already hazarded conjectures from whence they derive their foreign articles. It cannot be supposed, however, that the Russians have been amongst them, for we should not then have seen them clothed in such valuable skins as those of the sea-otter.

A very beneficial fur trade might certainly be carried on with the natives of this vast coast ; but,

with
Gre
It sh
only
rica,
were
obse
we p
men
cond
extre
peop
haps
them
prob
mals
food
once
such
acqu
to p
duou
whic
T
great
the s
o'clo
the t
the r
force
the t
this
T
and,

without a northern passage, it is too remote for Great Britain to be benefited by such commerce. It should, however, be observed, that almost the only valuable skins on this west side of North America, are those of the sea-otter. Their other skins were of an inferior quality; and it should be farther observed, that the greater part of the skins which we purchased from them, were made up into garments. Some of them, indeed, were in pretty good condition, others old and ragged, and all of them extremely lousy. But, as skins are used by these people only for cloathing themselves, they, perhaps, are not at the trouble of dressing more of them than they require for this purpose. This is probably the chief cause of their killing the animals, for they principally receive their supply of food from the sea and rivers. But if they were once habituated to a constant trade with foreigners, such an intercourse would increase their wants, by acquainting them with new luxuries; to be enabled to purchase which, they would become more assiduous in procuring skins; a plentiful supply of which might doubtless be obtained in this country.

The tide is very considerable in this river, and greatly assists to facilitate the navigation of it. In the stream it is high-water between two and three o'clock, on the days of the new and full moon; and the tide rises between four fathoms. The mouth of the river being in a corner of the coast, the ocean forces the flood into it by both shores, which swells the tide to a greater height than at other parts of this coast.

The ebb tide making in our favour, we weighed, and, with a gentle breeze at southwest, plied down

the river. The flood, however, obliged us to anchor again; but, about one o'clock the next morning, we got under sail, with a fresh breeze, passed the barren islands about eight, and at noon Cape St Hermogenes bore south-southeast, about eight leagues distant. We intended to go through the passage between the island of that name and the main land; but the wind soon after failed us, and we had baffling airs from the eastward; we, therefore, abandoned the design of carrying our ship through that passage.

We now beheld several columns of smoke on the continent, northward of the passage; which were probably meant as signals to attract us thither. The land forms a bay here, a low rocky island lying off the northwest point of it. Some other islands, of a similar appearance, are scattered along the coast between here and Point Banks.

About eight in the evening, St Hermogenes extended from south half east to south-southeast; and the rocks bore southeast, distant three miles. Here we had forty fathoms water, and caught several halibut with hooks and lines. We passed the rocks, and bore up to the southward about midnight; and, on the 7th, at noon, St Hermogenes bore north, at the distance of four leagues. The southermost point of the main land lay north half west, five leagues distant. The latitude of this promontory is $58^{\circ} 15'$, and its longitude $207^{\circ} 24'$. It was named after the day, *Cape Whitsunday*; and a large bay, to the west of it, was called *Whitsuntide Bay*.

The wind, which had been at northeast, shifted to the southward about two in the afternoon. The

us to an-
next morn-
ze, passed
noon Cape
about eight
rough the
e and the
ed us, and
we, there-
g our ship

oke of the
which were
ither. The
d lying off
islands, of
the coast

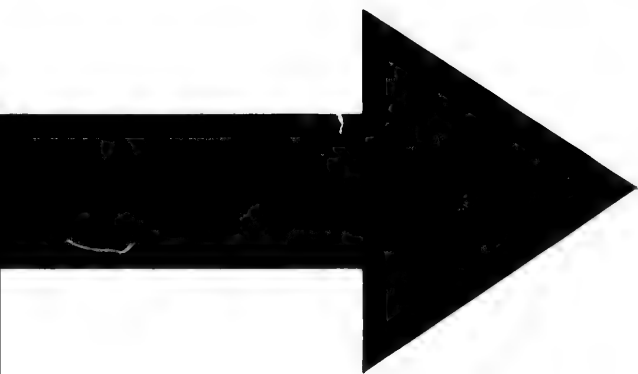
ogenes ex-
southeast;
three miles.
atched se-
passed the
about mid-
ermogenes
ues. The
north half
of this pro-
207° 24'.
unday; and
d Whitsun-
ast, shifted
noon. The

weather was gloomy, and the air cold. At mid-
night we stood in for the land, and at seven o'clock
in the morning of the eight, we were within four
miles of it, and less than two miles from some sunken
rocks, bearing west-southwest. Here we anchor-
ed in thirty-five fathoms water. In standing in for
the coast, we passed the mouth of Whitsuntide
Bay, and perceived land all around the bottom of
it; therefore the land must either be connected,
or the points lock in behind each other: the former
conjecture appears to be the most propable. There
are some small islands to the west of the bay. To
the southward the sea coast is low, with projecting
rocky points, having small inlets between them.
Upon the coast there was no wood, and but little
snow; but the mountains, at some distance inland,
were entirely covered with snow. We were now
in the latitude of $57^{\circ} 52\frac{1}{2}'$. The land here form-
ing a point, it was named *Cape Greville*. Its lati-
tude is $57^{\circ} 33'$, and its longitude $209^{\circ} 15'$. It is
fifteen leagues distant from St Hermogenes.

The 9th, 10th, and 11th, we had constant misty
weather, with some rain, and seldom had a sight
of the coast; we had a gentle breeze of wind, and
the air was raw and cold. We continued plying up
the coast.

In the evening of the 12th, the fog clearing up,
we saw the land about twelve leagues distant, bear-
ing west; and we stood in for it early the next morn-
ing. At noon we were within three miles of it;
an elevated point, which was named *Cape Barnabas*,
in the latitude of $57^{\circ} 13'$, bore north-northeast, at
the distance of about ten miles. We could not see
the northeast extreme for the haze, but the point





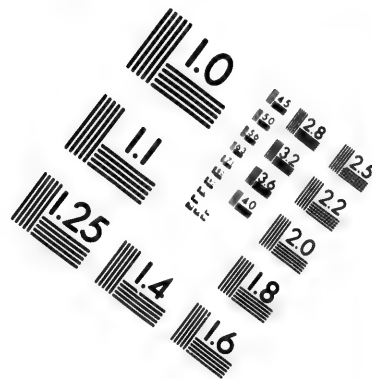
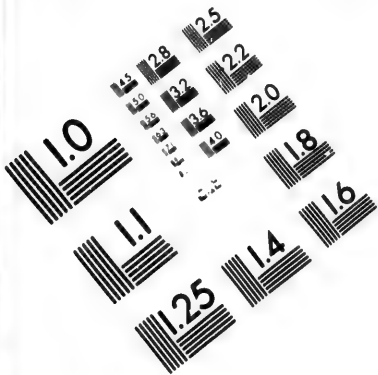
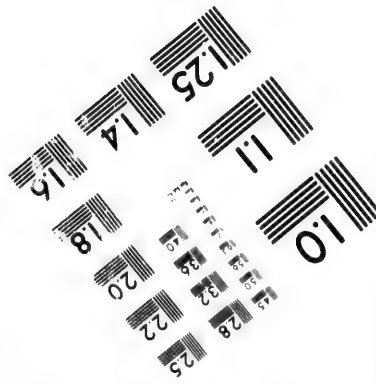
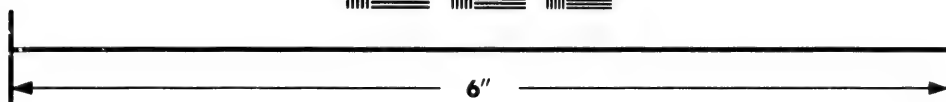
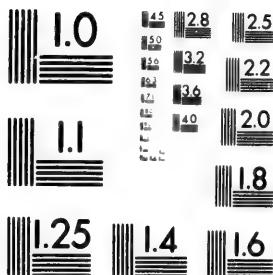


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503**



to the southward had an elevated summit, which terminated in two round hills, and was therefore called *Two headed Point*. This part of the coast is principally composed of high hills and deep valleys. We could sometimes perceive the tops of other hills, beyond those which form the coast, which had a very barren appearance, though not much incumbered with snow. Not a tree or bush was to be found, and the land, in general, had a brownish hue.

We continued to ply, and, at about six in the evening, being about mid-way between Cape Barnabas and Two-headed Point, two leagues from the shore, we had sixty-two fathoms water. Here a low point of land was observed, bearing south 69° west. On the 14th, at noon, we were in the latitude $56^{\circ} 49'$. The land seen the preceding evening now appeared like two islands. We were up with the southernmost part of this land the next morning, and perceived it to be an island, which obtained the name of *Trinity Island*. Its greatest extent, in the direction of east and west, is about six leagues. It has naked elevated land at each end, and is low towards the middle. Its latitude is $56^{\circ} 30'$, and its longitude 205° . It is distant about three leagues from the continent, between which rocks and islands are interspersed. There seems, nevertheless, to be good passage and safe anchorage. We, at first, imagined that this was Beering's *Foggy Island*, but its situation is not agreeable to his chart.

In the evening, at eight, we were within a league of the small islands above mentioned. The westernmost point of the continent, now in view, we called *Cap: Trinity*, it being a low point facing

Trinity
for the is
and the
we met t
to the m
ed, carefu
The w
pected it
ing, from
was here
we were
the conti
plish our
weather
necessity
fair wind
out to se
near the
thered th
ternoon,
south-sou
midnight
ther.

We ex
the night
ing; and
weather
and the
northwes
wind wit
a strong
and in a
cessary t
vourable

Trinity Island. In this situation, we stood over for the island, meaning to work up between that and the main. In standing over towards the island, we met two men in a canoe, paddling from thence to the main: instead of approaching us, they seemed carefully to avoid it.

The wind now inclining to the south, we expected it would presently be at southeast; knowing, from experience, that a southeasterly wind was here generally accompanied with a thick fog, we were afraid to venture between the island and the continent, lest we should not be able to accomplish our passage before night, or before the foggy weather came on, when we should be under the necessity of anchoring, and lose the advantage of a fair wind. Induced by these reasons, we stretched out to sea, and passed two or three rocky islands, near the east end of Trinity Island. Having weathered the island, we tacked about four in the afternoon, and steered west southerly, with a gale at south-southeast; which veered to the southeast about midnight, and was attended with misty rainy weather.

We expected from the course we steered during the night, to fall in with the continent in the morning; and we should doubtless have seen it, if the weather had been clear. No land appearing at noon, and the gale and fog increasing, we steered west northwest, under such sail as we could haul the wind with; sensible of the danger of running before a strong gale, in the vicinity of an unknown coast, and in a thick fog. It was, however, become necessary to run some risk, when the wind was favourable to us; as we were convinced that clear

weather was generally accompanied with westerly winds.

About three in the afternoon, land was perceived through the fog, bearing northwest, about three miles distant. We instantly hauled up south, close to the wind. The two courses were soon after split, and we had others to bring to the yards: several of our sails received considerable damage. The gale abated, and the weather cleared up about nine; when we again saw the coast, about the distance of five leagues. Our depth was a hundred fathoms water.

The fog returned soon after, and was dispersed about four o'clock the next morning; when we found ourselves, in some degree, surrounded by land; the continent, or that which we supposed to be the continent, some elevated land, bearing south-east about nine leagues distant. The extreme of the main, at the northeast, was the point of land seen during the fog; it was named *Foggy Cape*, and lies in the latitude of $56^{\circ} 31'$.

Having had but little wind all night, a breeze now sprung up at northwest; we stood to the southward with this, in order to make the land plainer, that was seen in that direction. About nine o'clock we discovered it to be an island, nine miles in circumference, in the latitude of $56^{\circ} 10'$, and the longitude of $202^{\circ} 45'$. In our chart, it is named *Foggy Island*; it being reasonable to suppose, from its situation, that it is the island on which Beering had bestowed the same appellation. Three or four islands bore north by west; a point, with pinnacle rocks upon it, bore northwest by west, called *Pinnacle Point*, and a cluster of islets south-southeast,

about nine
we had
considera

On W
between
fectly cle
tinent; a
north by
leagues
southwes
tinent.

The w
and it wa
is, proba
tween Fo
thick wea

The co
to the D
a most be
and the c
of the he
yellowish
of a red
birds was
nes; after
in large f
sea-birds
oceans, s
ducks, ge
day witho
great mag

We go
noon, and
islands an

about nine leagues from the coast. In the afternoon we had very little wind, and our progress was inconsiderable.

On Wednesday the 17th, we had gentle breezes between west and northwest; the weather was perfectly clear, and the air dry and sharp. The continent, about noon, extended from southwest to north by east; the nearest part about seven or eight leagues distant; a group of islands lying to the southwest, about the same distance from the continent.

The weather was clear and pleasant on the 18th, and it was calm the greatest part of the day. There is, probably, a continuation of the continent between Foggy Cape and Trinity Island, which the thick weather hindered us from perceiving.

The commodore having occasion to send a boat to the Discovery, one of the people aboard her shot a most beautiful bird. It is smaller than a duck, and the colour is black, except that the fore part of the head is white; behind each eye an elegant yellowish white crest arises; the bill and feet are of a reddish colour. The first we saw of these birds was to the southward of Cape St Hermogenes; after which we saw them daily, and frequently in large flocks. We often saw most of the other sea-birds that are usually met with in the northern oceans, such as shags, gulls, puffins, sheer-waters, ducks, geese, and swans; and we seldom passed a day without seeing whales, seals, and other fish of great magnitude.

We got a light breeze, southerly, in the afternoon, and steered west for the channel between the islands and the continent. At day-break the next

morning we were not far from it, and perceived several other islands, within those that we had already seen, of various dimensions. But, between these islands, and those we had seen before, there appeared to be a clear channel, for which we steered; and, at noon, our latitude was $55^{\circ} 18'$, in the narrowest part of the channel. Of this group of islands the largest was now upon our left, and is called *Kodiak*, as we were afterwards informed. The commodore did not bestow a name upon any of the others, though he supposed them to be the same that Beering has named Schumagin's Islands *. Islands appeared to the southward, as far as an island could be seen. They begin in the longitude of $200^{\circ} 15'$ east, and extend about two degrees to the westward.

Most of these islands are tolerably high, but very barren and rugged, exhibiting very romantic appearances, and abounding with rocks and cliffs. They have several bays and coves about them, and some fresh water streams descend from their elevated parts, but the land was not embellished with a single tree or bush. Plenty of snow still remained on many of them, as well as on those parts of the continent which appeared between the innermost islands.

By four o'clock in the afternoon we had passed all the islands to the south of us. We found thirty fathoms water in the channel, and soon after we had got through it, the *Discovery*, which was two miles astern, fired three guns, and brought to, making a signal to speak with us. Captain Cook

* *Découvertes des Russes, par Muller, p. 262, 277.*

was much
danger h
apprehen
or met
sent to h
tain Cler
some na
lowed th
astern, on
cap off,
rope was
he fasten
made son
Discover

It was
thing till
cidentally
paper, ca
appeared
sian lang
date of
the year
alphabet
numerals
these dre
ly meetin
highly sa
conversat
and those
At fir
sians had
our ships
thus to i
pressed v

was much alarmed at this ; for, as no apparent danger had been observed in the channel, he was apprehensive that the Discovery had sprung a leak, or met with some similar accident. A boat was sent to her, which immediately returned with captain Clerke. He informed the commodore, that some natives, in three or four canoes, having followed the ship for some time, at last got under his stern, one of whom made many signs, having his cap off, and bowing in the European manner. A rope was then handed down from the ship, to which he fastened a thin wooden box, and, after he had made some more gesticulations, the canoes left the Discovery.

It was not imagined that the box contained any thing till the canoes had departed, when it was accidentally opened, and found to contain a piece of paper, carefully folded up, on which some writing appeared, which they supposed to be in the Russian language. To this paper was prefixed the date of 1778, and a reference was made therein to the year 1776. Though unable to decypher the alphabet of the writer, we were convinced, by his numerals, that others had preceded us in visiting these dreary regions. Indeed, the hopes of speedily meeting some of the Russian traders, must be highly satisfactory to those who had been so long conversant with the savages of the Pacific Ocean, and those of the continent of North America.

At first captain Clerke imagined that some Russians had been shipwrecked here, and that, seeing our ships, these unfortunate persons were induced thus to inform us of their situation. Deeply impressed with sentiments of humanity on this occa-

sion, he was in hopes the Resolution would have stopped till they had time to join us, but no such idea ever occurred to captain Cook. If this had really been the case, he supposed, that the first step such shipwrecked persons would have taken, in order to secure relief, would have been to send some of their people off to the ships in the canoes. He, therefore, rather thought the paper was intended to communicate some information, from some Russian trader, who had lately visited these islands, to be delivered to any of his countrymen who should arrive, and that the natives, supposing us to be Russians, had brought off the note. Convinced of this, he inquired no farther into the matter, but made sail, and steered to the westward.

We ran all night with a gentle breeze at north-east, and the next morning, at two, some breakers were seen within us, distant about two miles; others were soon after seen a-head, and they were innumerable on our larboard bow, and also between us and the land. By holding a south course, we, with difficulty, cleared them. These breakers were produced by rocks, many of which were above water; they are very dangerous, and extend seven leagues from land. We got on their outside about noon, when our latitude was $54^{\circ} 44'$, and our longitude 198° . The nearest land was an elevated bluff point, and was named *Rock Point*; it bore north, about eight leagues distant; the westernmost part of the main bore northwest; and a high round hill, called *Halibut Head*, bore southwest, distant about thirteen leagues.

At noon, on the 21st, we made but little progress, having only faint winds and calms. Halibut

Head the where it from nor seven leagues head, is are near appears to be leagues.

We w continent, b very dist Island an ceive the cularly above the volcano these hills columns from the and the l plete con remarkab height to often mo at sea, e

Having wards of people, hundred ty. Th ed in th distant f visited b the large

Head then bore north 24° west, and the island where it is situate, called *Halibut Island*, extended from north by east to northwest. This island is seven leagues in circumference, and, except the head, is very low and barren; several small islands are near it, between which and the main there appears to be a passage of the breadth of two or three leagues.

We were kept at such a distance from the continent, by the rocks and breakers, that we had a very distant view of the coast between Halibut Island and Rock Point. We could, however, perceive the main land covered with snow, and particularly some hills, whose elevated tops towered above the clouds to a most stupendous height. A volcano was seen on the most south-westerly of these hills, which perpetually threw up immense columns of black smoke; it is at no great distance from the coast, and is in the latitude of $54^{\circ} 48'$, and the longitude of $195^{\circ} 45'$. Its figure is a complete cone, and the volcano is at the summit of it: remarkable as it may appear, the wind, at the height to which the smoke of the volcano rose, often moved in an opposite direction to what it did at sea, even in a fresh gale.

Having three hours calm in the afternoon, upwards of an hundred halibuts were caught by our people, some of which weighed upwards of an hundred pounds, and none of them less than twenty. They were highly acceptable to us. We fished in thirty-five fathoms water, about four miles distant from the shore, during which time we were visited by a man in a small canoe, who came from the large island. When he approached the ship,

he uncovered his head and bowed, as the other had done the preceding day, when he came off to the Discovery.

That the Russians had some communication with these people was evident, not only from their politeness, but from the written paper already mentioned. We had now an additional proof of it, for our new visitor had on a pair of green cloth breeches, and a jacket of black cloth, under the frock of his own country. He had with him a grey fox-skin and some fishing implements; also a bladder, in which was some liquid, which we supposed to be oil; for he opened it, drank a mouthful, and then closed it up again.

His canoe was smaller than those we had seen before, though of the same construction; like those who had visited the Discovery he used the double-bladed paddle. His features resembled those of the natives of Prince William's Sound, but he was perfectly free from any kind of paint; and his lip had been perforated in an oblique direction, though, at that time, he had not any ornament in it. Many of the words, so frequently used by our visitors in the Sound, were repeated to him, but he did not appear to understand any of them, owing either to his ignorance of the dialect, or our erroneous pronunciation.

The weather was mostly cloudy and hazy till the afternoon of the 22d, when the wind shifted to the southeast, attended, as usual, with thick rainy weather. Before the fog, we saw no part of the main land, except the volcano, and a neighbouring mountain. We steered west till seven, when, fearing we might fall in with the land in thick weather,

we hauled
ing, and
but trifi
able: at
interval
north 59

On the
continent
by east t
leagues d
sisted of
ceding n
distance
little win
caught o

We g
and, with
ther; ins
the other
them. I
northwes
islands a
steered,
we did n
nent, a p
ful, as w
was insul
much to
southwar
in sight,
direction.

Three
passed by
the west

we hauled to the southward till two the next morning, and then bore away west. Our progress was but trifling, having but little wind, and that variable: at five o'clock in the afternoon we had an interval of sun-shine, when we saw land, bearing north 59° west.

On the 24th, at six in the morning, we saw the continent, and at nine it extended from northeast by east to southwest by west; the nearest part four leagues distant. The land to the southwest consisted of islands, being what we had seen the preceding night. In the evening, being about the distance of four leagues from the shore, and having little wind, we threw out our hooks and lines, but caught only two or three little cod.

We got an easterly breeze the next morning, and, with it, what was very uncommon, clear weather; insomuch, that we clearly saw the volcano, the other mountains, and all the mainland under them. It extended from northeast by north to northwest half west. Between this point and the islands a large opening appeared, for which we steered, till land was seen beyond it; and, though we did not perceive that this land joined the continent, a passage through the opening was very doubtful, as well as whether the land to the southwest was insular or continental. Unwilling to trust too much to appearances, we therefore steered to the southward, when, having got without all the land in sight, we steered west, the islands lying in that direction.

Three of them, all of a good height, we had passed by eight o'clock; more were now seen to the westward. In the afternoon the weather be-

came gloomy, and afterwards turned to a mist, the wind blowing fresh at east. We therefore hauled the wind to the southward till day-break, and then proceeded on our course to the west.

We derived but little advantage from day-light, the weather being so thick that we could not discover objects at the distance of a hundred yards, but, as the wind was moderate, we ventured to run. About half an hour after four the sound of breakers alarmed us, on our larboard bow; we found twenty-eight fathoms water, and then twenty-five. We brought the ship to, and anchored in the last depth, the commodore ordering the *Discovery*, who was not far distant, to anchor also.

Some hours after, the fog being a little dispersed, we discovered the imminent danger we had escaped. We were three quarters of a mile from the north-east side of an island; two elevated rocks were about half a league from us, and from each other. Several breakers also appeared about them; and yet providence had safely conducted the ships through in the dark, between these rocks, which we should not have attempted to have done in a clear day, and to so commodious an anchoring place.

Being so near land, captain Cook ordered a boat ashore to examine what it produced. When she returned in the afternoon, the officer who commanded her said he saw some grass, and other small plants, one of which had the appearance of purslain, but the island produced neither trees nor shrubs.

The wind blew fresh at south, in the night, but in the morning was more moderate, and the fog in

a great
o'clock,
we had
The br
mile, an
through
which w
now pre
the south
southwe
island ca
Betwe
which w
appeared
On a poi
of three
natives a
saw two
just been
sionally
little traff
with us
They see
readily di
yessels si
manner d
had neve
tribes.

About
a light b
and proce
pecting,
find the l
we should

a great degree dispersed. We weighed at seven o'clock, and steered between the island near which we had anchored and a small one not far from it. The breadth of the channel does not exceed a mile, and the wind failed before we could pass through it; we were therefore obliged to anchor, which we did in thirty-four fathoms water. Land now presented itself in every direction. That to the south extended, in a ridge of mountains, to the southwest, which we afterwards found to be an island called *Oonalashka*.

Between this island and the land to the north, which we supposed to be a group of islands, there appeared to be a channel in a northwest direction. On a point, west from the ship, and at the distance of three quarters of a mile, we perceived several natives and their habitations. To this place we saw two whales towed in, which we supposed had just been killed. A few of the inhabitants occasionally came off to the ships, and engaged in a little traffic with our people, but never continued with us above a quarter of an hour at a time. They seemed remarkably shy, though we could readily discover they were not unacquainted with vessels similar, in some degree, to ours. Their manner displayed a degree of politeness which we had never experienced among any of the savage tribes.

About one in the afternoon, being favoured with a light breeze, and the tide of flood, we weighed, and proceeded to the channel last mentioned, expecting, when we had passed through, either to find the land trend away to the northward, or that we should discover a passage out to sea to the west.

For we did not suppose ourselves to be in an inlet of the continent, but among islands, and we were right in our conjectures. Soon after we got under sail the wind veered to the north, and we were obliged to ply. The depth of water was from forty to twenty-seven fathoms. In the evening, the ebb made it necessary for us to anchor within three leagues of our last station.

We weighed the next morning at day-break, and were wafted up the passage by a light breeze at south; after which we had variable airs in all directions. There was, however, a rapid tide in our favour, and the *Resolution* got through before the ebb made. The discovery was not equally fortunate, for she was carried back, got into the race, and found a difficulty in getting clear of it.

Being now through the channel we found the land, on one side, trending west and southwest, and that on the other side to north. This encouraged us to hope that the continent had taken a new direction in our favour. Being short of water, and expecting to be driven about in a rapid tide, without wind sufficient to govern the ship, we stood for a harbour on the south side of the passage, but were driven beyond it; and, that we might not be forced back through the passage, anchored near the southern shore, in twenty-eight fathoms water, and out of the reach of the strong tide, though even here it ran five knots and an half in an hour.

In this situation we were visited by several of the natives, in separate canoes. They bartered some fishing implements for tobacco. A young man among them upset his canoe while he was alongside of one of our boats. He was caught hold of

by one
by another
this account
the ship
readily
or embarking
resembling
some of
another
birds with
ther, the
patched
was embarking
His
some of
readiness
viour of
evidently
gers to
Someth
their cu
them o
have a
At lo
bour, v
the Di
sent to
trout, a
anchore
ther no
given to
tain Co
languag
As it

by one of our people, but the canoe was taken up by another and carried ashore. In consequence of this accident the youth was obliged to come into the ship, where he was invited into the cabin, and readily accepted the invitation, without any surprise or embarrassment. He had on an upper garment resembling a shirt, made of the gut of a whale, or some other large sea-animal. Under this he had another of the same form, made of the skins of birds with the feathers on, curiously sewed together, the feathered side placed next the skin. It was patched with several pieces of silk stuff, and his cap was embellished with glass beads.

His clothes being wet, we furnished him with some of our own, which he put on with as much readiness as we could have done. From the behaviour of this youth, and that of several others, it evidently appeared, that these people were no strangers to Europeans, and to many of their customs. Something in our ships, however, greatly excited their curiosity, for such as had not canoes to bring them off assembled on the neighbouring hills to have a view of them.

At low-water we towed the ship into the harbour, where we anchored in nine fathoms water, the *Discovery* arriving soon after. A boat was sent to draw the seine, but we caught only a few trout, and some other small fish. We had not long anchored before a native of the island brought another note on board, similar to that which had been given to captain Clerke. He presented it to captain Cook, but, as it was written in the Russian language, neither he, nor any of us, could read it. As it could not be of any use to us, and might

probably be of consequence to others, the commodore returned it to the bearer, accompanied with a few presents, for which he expressed his thanks, as he retired, by several low bows.

On the 29th we saw along the shore a group of the natives of both sexes, seated on the grass, partaking of a repast of raw fish, which they seemed to relish exceedingly.

We were detained by thick fogs, and a contrary wind, till the 2d of July, during which time we acquired some knowledge of the country, as well as of its inhabitants, the particulars of which shall be hereafter related.

The harbour is called *Samganoodha* by the natives, and is situate on the north side of Oonalashka, the latitude being $53^{\circ} 55'$, the longitude $193^{\circ} 30'$, and in the streight which separates this island from those to the north. It is about a mile broad at the entrance, and runs in about four miles south by west. It narrows towards the head, the breadth there not exceeding a quarter of a mile. Plenty of good water may be procured here, but no wood of any kind.

P A

Departure
Most w
Wales
mity of
to their
weapon
summer
the coa
ting th
situatio
—Sea
—Floc
tions o
weathe
deferre

O N
east, to
obstruct

V O Y A G E

TO THE

PACIFIC OCEAN.

BOOK IV. CONTINUED.

CONTENTS.

Departure from Samanganoodha—Death of Mr Anderson—
Most westerly point of America named Cape Prince of
Wales—The ships anchor in a bay on the Eastern extre-
mity of Asia—Behaviour of the natives, the Tschutski,
to their visitors—Interview with some of them—Their
weapon—Persons—Ornaments—Clothing—Winter and
summer abitations—Dogs—The ships cross the strait to
the coast of America—Appearance of the horizon indica-
ting the vicinity of ice—Prodigious fields of ice—The
situation of Icy Cape—Imminent danger of the two ships
—Sea horses killed, and eaten—Those animals described
—Flocks of birds indicating land to the north—Observa-
tions on the formation of the ice—Fruitless attempt to
weather Cape North—The prosecution of the Voyage
deferred to the ensuing year.

ON the 2d of July we steered from Samga-
noodha, with a gentle breeze at south-south-
east, to the northward, and met with nothing to
obstruct us in that course. For, on the one side, the

Isle of Oonalashka trended southwest, and, on the other, no land was visible in a direction more northerly than northeast; all which land was a continuation of the same group of islands that we had fallen in with on the 25th of the preceding month. That which is situate before Samganoodha, and constitutes the north-eastern side of the passage through which we came, is denominated Oonella, and its circumference is about seven leagues. Another island, lying to the north-eastward of it, bears the name of Acootan; it is considerably superior in size to Oonella, and has in it some very lofty mountains, which were, at this time, covered with snow. It appeared that we might have passed with great safety between these two islands and the continent, whose south-western point opened off the north-eastern point of Acootan, and proved to be the same point of land that we had discerned when we left the coast of the continent, the 25th of June, to go without the islands. It is termed Oonemak by the natives, and is situate in the longitude of $102^{\circ} 30'$ east, and in the latitude of $54^{\circ} 30'$ north. Over the cape, which of itself is high land, there is a round elevated mountain, at present covered with snow. This mountain bore east 2° north, at six o'clock in the afternoon, and, two hours afterwards, no land was to be seen. Concluding, therefore, that the coast of the continent had now inclined to the north-eastward, we steered the same course till one o'clock the following morning, when the watch stationed upon deck imagined they saw land a-head. Upon this we wore, and for the space of about two hours stood towards the southwest, after which we resumed our course

to the ea
a-head, a
ing south
and more
At twelve
from sou
being five
this time
21' north
and found
forty-eigh
from the
the direct
vated rou
On Sa
morning,
and east
discern hi
long after
thoms w
good num
an easter
we found
which ex
and the
southwes
leagues.
south-we
main lan
northerly
when the
to steer
rection,
was at t

to the east-northeast. At six we discovered land ahead, at the distance of about five leagues, bearing southeast. As we advanced we descried more and more land, the whole of which was connected. At twelve o'clock, we observed that it extended from south-southwest to east, the part nearest to us being five or six leagues distant. Our longitude at this time was $195^{\circ} 18'$ east, and our latitude $55^{\circ} 21'$ north. At six in the afternoon we sounded, and found a bottom of black sand at the depth of forty-eight fathoms. We were now four leagues from the land; and the eastern part in sight was in the direction of east-southeast, appearing as an elevated round hummock.

On Saturday the 4th, at eight o'clock in the morning, we saw the coast from south-south-west, and east by south; and, at intervals, we could discern high land covered with snow behind it. Not long after we had a calm; and being in thirty fathoms water, we caught, with hook and line, a good number of excellent cod. At twelve we had an easterly breeze and clear weather; at which time we found ourselves about six leagues from the land, which extended from south by west to east by south; and the hummock, seen the preceding evening, bore southwest by south, at the distance of nine or ten leagues. A great hollow swell from the west-south-westward, convinced us, that there was no main land in that direction near us. We steered a northerly course till six o'clock in the afternoon, when the wind veering to the southeast, enabled us to steer east-northeast. The coast lay in this direction, and at twelve o'clock on the following day was at the distance of about four leagues.

We made but little progress on the 6th and 7th, as the wind was northerly. In the evening of the latter day, about eight o'clock, the depth of water was nineteen fathoms, and we were three or four leagues from the coast, which, on Wednesday the 8th, extended from south-southwest to east by north, and was all low land, with a ridge of mountains covered with snow behind it. It is not improbable, that this low coast extends to a considerable distance towards the southwest; and that those places which we sometimes supposed to be inlets or bays, are nothing more than valleys between the mountains. This day we put our hooks and lines over, and caught plenty of fine cod.

On the 9th, in the morning, having a breeze at northwest, we steered east by north, in order to make a nearer approach to the coast. At noon, we were at the distance of about two leagues from the land, which was observed to extend from south by east to east-northeast; being all a low coast, with points projecting in several places, which, from the deck, had the appearance of islands; but from the mast-head, we saw that low land connected them. We were now in the longitude of $201^{\circ} 33'$ east, and in the latitude of $57^{\circ} 49'$ north. In this situation our soundings were fifteen fathoms, over a bottom of fine black sand.

In advancing towards the northeast, we had found that the depth of water gradually decreased, and the coast trended more and more northerly. But we observed, that the ridge of mountains behind it continued to lie in the same direction as those that were more westerly; so that the extent of the low land, between the coast and the foot of the moun-

tains, in some grounds was apparently excepted,

As we westerly fifteen to ten miles in the evening some time the distance mountains much farther coast was north, where yond which that it would not long a from behind where it was discerned from each of getting We stood before me ing north which, a breadth. ed, as up a similar rection, tween the east, and doubtless

tains, insensibly increased. Both the low and high grounds were totally destitute of wood; but were apparently covered with a green turf, the mountains excepted, which were involved in snow.

As we proceeded along the coast with a light westerly breeze, the water shoaled gradually from fifteen to ten fathoms, though we were now eight or ten miles distant from the shore. About eight o'clock in the evening, a lofty mountain, which had been some time within sight, bore southeast by east, at the distance of twenty-one leagues. Several other mountains, forming a part of the same chain, and much farther distant, bore east 3° north. The coast was seen to extend as far as north-east half north, where it seemed to terminate in a point, beyond which it was both our hope and expectation, that it would assume a more easterly direction. But not long afterwards, we saw low land, that extended from behind this point, as far as northwest by west, where it was lost in the horizon, and behind it we discerned high land, appearing in hills detached from each other. Thus the fine prospect we had of getting to the northward vanished in an instant. We stood on till nine o'clock, and then the point before mentioned was about one league distant, bearing northeast half east. Behind the point is a river, which, at its entrance, seemed to be a mile in breadth. The water appeared somewhat discoloured, as upon shoals; but a calm would have given it a similar aspect. It seemed to take a winding direction, through the extensive flat which lies between the chain of mountains towards the south-east, and the hills to the north-westward. It doubtless abounds with salmon, as many of those

fish were seen leaping in the sea before the entrance, and some were found in the maws of cod that we had caught. The mouth of this river, which we distinguished by the appellation of Bristol River, is situate in the longitude of $201^{\circ} 55'$ east, and in the latitude of $58^{\circ} 27'$ north.

At day-break, on the 10th, we made sail to the west-southwest, with a light breeze at northeast. About eleven o'clock, thinking that the coast towards the northwest terminated in a point bearing north-west by west, the Commodore steered for that point, having ordered the Discovery to keep a-head. But, before that vessel had run a mile, she made a signal for shoal water. At that very time we had the depth of seven fathoms; and before we could get the head of our ship the other way, we had less than five: but the Discovery's soundings were less than four fathoms. We now stood back to the northeast three or four miles, but observing that there was a strong tide setting to the west-south-west, that is, towards the shoal, we brought the ships to anchor in about ten fathoms, over a sandy bottom. Two hours after we had cast anchor, the water had fallen upwards of two feet, which proved that it was the tide of ebb that came from the Bristol River.

In the afternoon, at four o'clock, the wind having shifted to the southwest, we weighed and made sail towards the south, several boats being occupied a-head in sounding. Having passed over the south end of the shoal, in six fathoms water, we afterwards got into thirteen and fifteen; in which last depth we let go our anchors again, between eight and nine in the evening; some part of the

chain of
in sight,
most west
west. In
high land
we suppo

We we
o'clock,
and plied
flood tide
twenty-fo
noon the
dispersing
weighed a
Towards
riable, an
none befo
coast; an
distance.
west quan
steered a
the conti
by north
an elevat
northwes
found to
figure, c
Island.
and the l
distant f
ing, hav
three lea
thoms w
east-sout

chain of mountains on the south-eastern shore being in sight, and bearing southeast half south; and the most westerly land on the other shore bearing north-west. In the course of this day, we had descried high land, which bore north 60° west, and which we supposed to be about twelve leagues distant.

We weighed anchor the next morning, at two o'clock, with a gentle breeze at southwest by west, and plied to windward till nine; when judging the flood tide to be now against us, we anchored in twenty-four fathoms water. At one in the afternoon the fog, which had this morning prevailed, dispersing, and the tide becoming favourable, we weighed again, and plied to the south-westward. Towards the evening, the wind was extremely variable, and we had some thunder: we had heard none before, from the time of our arrival on the coast; and that which we now heard was at a great distance. The wind settling again in the south-west quarter, in the morning of Sunday the 12th, we steered a northwest course, and, at ten o'clock, saw the continent. At mid day, it extended northeast by north, to north-northwest a quarter west; and an elevated hill appeared in the direction of north-northwest, nine or ten leagues distant. This was found to be an island, to which, on account of its figure, captain Cook gave the name of Round Island. It stands in the latitude of $58^{\circ} 37'$ north, and the longitude of $20^{\circ} 6'$ east, and is seven leagues distant from the continent. At nine in the evening, having steered a northerly course to within three leagues of the shore, we tacked in fourteen fathoms water, the extremities of the coast bearing east-southeast half east, and west.

The wind now veered to the northwest, and enabled us to stretch along the shore till two the next morning, when we suddenly got into six fathoms water, being then six miles from the land. After we had edged off a little, our depth of water gradually increased; and, at twelve o'clock, our soundings were twenty fathoms. Round Island, at this time, bore north 5° east; and the western extreme of the coast was seven leagues distant, bearing north 16° west. It is an elevated point, to which the appellation of Calm Point was given, from our having calm weather while we were off it. To the northwestward of Round Island, we discerned two or three hillocks, which had an insular appearance; and perhaps they may be islands, for we had but a distant prospect of this particular part of the coast.

We advanced but slowly on the 14th and 15th, having little wind, and, at times, a very thick fog. Our soundings were from twenty-six to fourteen fathoms; and we had pretty good success in fishing, for we caught plenty of cod, and some flat fish. On Thursday the 16th, at five o'clock in the morning, the fog clearing up, we found ourselves nearer the shore than we expected. Calm Point bore north 72° east, and a point about eight leagues from it, in a westerly direction, bore north 3° east, only three miles distant. Betwixt these two points, the coast forms a bay, in several parts of which the land could scarcely be seen from the mast-head. There is another bay on the north-western side of the last-mentioned point, between it and a high promontory, which now bore north 86° west, at the distance of sixteen miles. About nine o'clock, captain Cook dispatched lieutenant Williamson to

this promontory, to serve what purpose was required, and what was the result when viewed. We here observed the distance towards the north at o'clock it was the distance of four fathoms, five, the weight, Mr W had landed most elevated of the correction.

name of a bottle, of our ship, date of the voyage, the point of departure, the latitude of the place, the rise one hour or eastern as Mr V single tree on the lot of various time in the day a doe and that lay had lately

this promontory, with orders to go ashore, and observe what direction the coast assumed beyond it, and what was the produce of the country; which, when viewed from the ships, had but a sterile aspect. We here found the flood-tide setting strongly towards the northwest, along the coast. At twelve o'clock it was high-water, and we cast anchor at the distance of twelve miles from the shore, in twenty-four fathoms water. In the afternoon, about five, the tide beginning to make in our favour, we weighed, and drove with it, there being no wind.

Mr Williamson, at his return, reported, that he had landed on the point, and, having ascended the most elevated hill, found, that the most distant part of the coast in sight was nearly in a northerly direction. He took possession of the country in the name of his Britannic Majesty, and left on the hill a bottle, containing a paper, on which the names of our ships, and of their commanders, and the date of the discovery were inscribed. The promontory, which he named Cape Newenham, is a rocky point of considerable height; and stands in the longitude of $197^{\circ} 36'$ east, and in the latitude of $58^{\circ} 42'$ north. Over it, or within it, two lofty hills rise one behind the other; of which the innermost, or easternmost, is the highest. The country, as far as Mr Williamson could discern, produces not a single tree or shrub. The hills were naked; but, on the lower grounds, there grew grass and plants of various kinds, very few of which were at this time in flower. He met with no other animals than a doe and her fawn, and a dead sea-horse or cow that lay upon the beach. Of the latter animal we had lately seen a considerable number.

The coast, as we have already mentioned, assuming a northerly direction from Cape Newenham, that cape is the northern boundary of the extensive bay and gulph, situate before the river Bristol, which, in honour of the admiral earl of Bristol, received from the commodore the denomination of Bristol Bay. Cape Oonemak forms the southern limit of this bay ; and is eighty-two leagues distant, in the direction of south-southwest, from Cape Newenham.

A light breeze arising about eight o'clock in the evening, and settling at south-southeast, we steered to the northwest, and north-northwest, round Cape Newenham ; which, at twelve the following day, was four leagues distant, bearing south by east. Our soundings, at this time, were seventeen fathoms ; the most advanced land towards the north bore north 30° east ; and the nearest part of the coast was three leagues and a half distant. During the whole afternoon, there was but little wind ; so that, by ten o'clock in the evening, we had only proceeded three leagues on a northerly course.

We steered north by west till eight o'clock the next morning, (Saturday the 18th) when, the depth of water suddenly decreasing to seven and five fathoms, we brought to, till a boat from each of our ships was sent a-head to sound, and then steered to the northeast. At noon, the water was deepened to seventeen fathoms. Cape Newenham was now eleven or twelve leagues distant, bearing south 9° east ; the north-eastern extremity of the land in sight bore north 66° east ; and the distance of the nearest shore was four or five leagues. Our present latitude was $59^{\circ} 16'$ north. Between Cape Newen-

ham and the hills,

Before the signal two fathoms were in sight north, we were between five fathoms and less and less the Discovery anchor, and up the River so that we could anchor.

from of four leagues from the shore bore south the farthest north, bore land stretched far as north shoal of two masts sound between their return soundings was rather

We attempted round the success. behind us ing it, length, While we

ham and this latitude, the coast consists of low land and hills, and seemed to form several bays.

Before one o'clock, the boats a-head displayed the signal of shoal water. They had, indeed, only two fathoms; and, at the same time, the ships were in six fathoms water. By hauling more to the north, we continued nearly in the same depth till between five and six o'clock, when our boats finding less and less water, captain Cook made the signal to the Discovery, which was then a-head, to cast anchor, and both ships soon came to. In bringing up the Resolution, her cable parted at the clinch, so that we were obliged to make use of the other anchor. We rode in six fathoms water, over a bottom of sand, at the distance of four or five leagues from the continent. Cape Nowenham now bore south, sixteen or seventeen leagues distant; the farthest hills we could perceive towards the north, bore northeast by east; and there was low land stretching out from the more elevated land, as far as north by east. Without this there was a shoal of stones and sand, dry at half ebb. The two masters having been sent, each in a boat, to sound between the shoal and the coast, reported, on their return, that there was a channel, in which the soundings were six and seven fathoms, but that it was rather narrow and intricate.

We attempted, at low-water, to get a hawser round the lost anchor, but we did not then meet success. However, being resolved not to leave it behind us, while there was any prospect of recovering it, we persevered in our endeavours; and, at length, in the evening of the 20th, we succeeded. While we were thus occupied, the commodore or-

dered captain Clerke to dispatch his master in a boat, to search for a passage in a southwest direction. He accordingly did so, but no channel was observed in that quarter; nor did it appear that there was any other way to get clear of the shoals, than by returning by the same track in which we had entered. For, though by following the channel we were now in, we might perhaps have got further down the coast; and though this channel might probably have carried us at last to the northward, clear of the shoals, yet the attempt would have been attended with extreme hazard; and, in case of ill success, there would have been a great loss of time that we could not conveniently spare. These reasons induced the commodore to return by the way which had brought us in, and thus avoid the shoals.

The longitude of our present station, by lunar observations, was $19^{\circ} 45' 48''$ east, and the latitude $59^{\circ} 37' 30''$ north. The most northern part of the coast, that we could discern from this station, was supposed to be situate in the latitude of 60° . It formed, to appearance, a low point, which received the name of Shoal Ness. The tide of flood sets to the northward, and the ebb to the southward: it rises and falls five or six feet upon a perpendicular; and we reckon that it is high-water at eight o'clock, on the full and change days.

At three in the morning of the 21st, we weighed anchor with a gentle breeze at north-northwest, and steered back to the south, having three boats a-head employed in sounding. Notwithstanding this precaution, we met with greater difficulty in returning than we had found in advancing; and were at length

under the
ger of r
of five
ven Am
to the sh
gree of
and open
understo
them, at
trifling
gave enc
and a tra
our peo
darts, an
for whic
them.

ple with
coast; a
same spe
clothed,
to be pe
tion; th
nor did
article,
This, in
common
as to ser
so well
that it
were de

The
off, a
hind.
hood o

under the necessity of anchoring, to avoid the danger of running upon a shoal that had only a depth of five feet. While we lay at anchor, twenty-seven Americans, each in a separate canoe, came off to the ships, which they approached with some degree of caution. As they advanced they hollowed and opened their arms; thereby intimating, as we understood, their peaceable intentions. Some of them, at last, came near enough to receive a few trifling articles which we threw to them. This gave encouragement to others to venture along-side; and a traffic quickly commenced between them and our people, who obtained wooden vessels, bows, darts, arrows, dresses of skins, &c. in exchange for which the natives accepted whatever we offered them. They appeared to be the same sort of people with those we had met with all along this coast; and they wore in their lips and noses the same species of ornaments, but were not so well clothed, and were far more dirty. They seemed to be perfectly unacquainted with any civilized nation; they were ignorant of the use of tobacco; nor did we observe in their possession any foreign article, unless a knife may be considered as such. This, indeed, was nothing more than a piece of common iron fitted in a handle, made of wood, so as to serve the purpose of a knife. They, however, so well knew the use and value of this instrument, that it seemed to be almost the only article they were desirous of.

The hair of most of them was shaved, or cut short off, a few locks only being left on one side or behind. They wore, as a covering for their heads, a hood of skins, and a bonnet, which was seemingly

of wood. One part of their dress, which we procured from them, was a kind of girdle, made of skin in a very neat manner, with trappings depending from it, and passing betwixt the thighs, so as to conceal the adjacent parts. From the use of this girdle, it is probable that they sometimes go in other respects naked, even in this high northern latitude: for it can scarcely be supposed that they wear it under their other clothing. Their canoes were covered with skins, like those we had lately seen; but they were broader, and the hole wherein the person sits was wider than in any of those we had before met with. Our boats returning from sounding appeared to give some alarm, so that they all departed sooner than perhaps they otherwise would have done.

We did not get clear of the shoals before the evening of Wednesday the 22d; and then we durst not venture to steer towards the west during the night, but spent it off Cape Newenham. At day-break, on the 23d, we stood to the north-westward, the Discovery being ordered to go a-head. Before we had proceeded two leagues, our soundings decreased to six fathoms. Being apprehensive, that, if we continued this course, we should meet with less and less water, we hauled to the south, with a fresh easterly breeze. This course gradually brought us into eighteen fathoms water, upon which we ventured to steer a little westerly, and afterwards due west, when we at length found twenty-six fathoms. At noon, on the 24th, our longitude, by observation, was $194^{\circ} 22'$ east, and our latitude $58^{\circ} 7'$ north. About three leagues to the west of this situation, our soundings were twenty-eight fa-

thoms; a depth of fathoms.

had not

In the little wind our anchor at that time north.

weather

and, with

northward

five to ten

ceeded

the wind

obliged

the most

twelve

shine for

observa-

reduced

$59^{\circ} 55'$

time-ke-

Conti-

land at

northward

We stood

when

then a

northward

formed

which

Point

187°

thoms; and we then steered west-northwest, the depth of water gradually increasing to thirty-four fathoms. We should have steered more northerly had not the wind prevented us.

In the evening of Saturday the 25th, having but little wind, and an exceedingly thick fog, we let go our anchors in thirty fathoms, our longitude being, at that time, $191^{\circ} 37'$ east, and our latitude $58^{\circ} 29'$ north. About six o'clock the next morning, the weather in some degree clearing up, we weighed, and, with a gentle breeze at east, steered to the northward, our depth of water being from twenty-five to twenty-eight fathoms. After we had proceeded on this course for the space of nine leagues, the wind veered to the north, so that we were obliged to steer more westerly. The weather, for the most part, continued to be foggy, till about twelve o'clock on the 28th, when we had clear sunshine for a few hours, during which several lunar observations were made. The mean result of these, reduced to noon, at which time our latitude was $59^{\circ} 55'$ north, gave $190^{\circ} 6'$ east longitude, and the time-keeper gave $189^{\circ} 59'$.

Continuing our westerly course, we discovered land at four in the morning of the 29th, bearing northwest by west, at the distance of six leagues. We stood towards it till between ten and eleven, when we tacked in twenty-four fathoms, being then a league from the land, which bore north-northwest. It was the south-eastern extreme, and formed a perpendicular cliff of great height, upon which account captain Cook gave it the name of Point Upright. It stands in the longitude of $187^{\circ} 30'$ east, and in the latitude of $60^{\circ} 17'$ north.

More land was perceived to the westward of this point, and, at a clear interval, we discerned another portion of high land, bearing west by south, and this seemed to be perfectly separated from the other. We here observed an amazing number of birds, such as guillemots, hawks, &c.

During the whole afternoon we had baffling light winds, which occasioned our progress to be but slow; and the weather was not sufficiently clear to enable us to determine the extent of the land that was before us. We conjectured it was one of the many islands laid down in Mr Stæhlin's map of the New Northern Archipelago, and we every moment expected to descry more of them.

On the 30th, at four o'clock in the afternoon, Point Upright was six leagues distant, bearing northwest by north. A light breeze now springing up at north-northwest, we steered northeastward till four the next morning, when the wind veered to the east; we then tacked, and stood to the northwest. The wind, not long after, shifting to the southeast, we steered northeast by north, and continued this course, with soundings from thirty-five to twenty fathoms, till noon the following day (August 1.) Our latitude at this time was $60^{\circ} 58'$ north, and our longitude was 191° east. The wind now becoming north-easterly, we first made a stretch of about ten leagues towards the northwest; and then, as we observed no land in that direction, we stood back to the east for the space of fourteen or fifteen leagues, and met with a considerable quantity of drift-wood. Our depth of water was from twenty-two to nineteen fathoms,

On S
winds, w
day. In
in the so
ward cou
sixteen fa
longitude

Between
Mr And
after he
wards of
telligent
He had
quired a
departme
have obs
in the co
been pro
have rece
tions res
places vi
his breat
the dista
be an isl
memory
cular est
derson's
geon of
solution
of the
Law as

At t
land ext
We ste

On Sunday, the 2d of August, variable light winds, with showers of rain, prevailed the whole day. In the morning of the 3d, the wind settling in the southeast quarter, we resumed our northward course. At twelve o'clock our soundings were sixteen fathoms, our latitude was $62^{\circ} 34'$ north, and longitude 192° east.

Between three and four o'clock this afternoon, Mr Anderson, surgeon of the Resolution, expired, after he had lingered under a consumption for upwards of a twelvemonth. He was a sensible, intelligent young man, and an agreeable companion. He had great skill in his profession, and had acquired a considerable portion of knowledge in other departments of science. Our readers will doubtless have observed, how useful an assistant he had proved in the course of the voyage; and if his life had been prolonged to a later period, the public might have received from him many valuable communications respecting the natural history of the different places visited by us. Soon after he had resigned his breath, we discovered land to the westward, at the distance of twelve leagues. We supposed it to be an island, and the commodore, to perpetuate the memory of the deceased, for whom he had a particular esteem, distinguished it by the name of Anderson's Island. The following day Mr Law, surgeon of the Discovery, was removed into the Resolution, and Mr Samuel, the surgeon's first mate of the Resolution, was appointed to succeed Mr Law as surgeon of the Discovery.

At three in the afternoon, on the 4th, we saw land extending from north-northeast to northwest. We steered towards it till four, when, being four or

five miles distant from it, we tacked ; and, not long afterwards, the wind failing, we let go our anchors in thirteen fathoms, over a sandy bottom, at the distance of about two leagues from land. Our latitude was now $64^{\circ} 27'$ north, and longitude $194^{\circ} 18'$ east. We could, at intervals, discern the coast extending from east to northwest, and an island of considerable elevation, bearing west by north, nine miles distant.

The land before us, which we imagined to be the continent of America, appeared rather low next the sea ; but, inland, it rose in hills, which seemed to be of a tolerable height. It had a greenish hue, and was apparently destitute of wood, and free from snow. While our ships remained at anchor, we observed that the tide of flood came from the eastward, and set to the westward, till between the hours of ten and eleven ; from which time, till two o'clock the next morning, the stream set to the east, and the water fell three feet. The flood running both longer and stronger than the ebb, we concluded that there was a westerly current besides the tide.

On Wednesday the 5th, at ten o'clock in the morning, we ran down, and, soon after, anchored between the island and the continent in seven fathoms. Not long after we had cast anchor, captain Cook, accompanied by Mr King and some other officers, landed upon the island. He hoped to have had from it a prospect of the coast and sea towards the west ; but, in that direction, the fog was so thick, that the view was not more extensive than it was from our ships. The coast of the continent seemed to incline to the north, at a low joint,

named by
island no
or four
a more
greater

The
its long
miles in
principa
many p
which t
served, a
captain
or upon
where h
wild pu
he took
plovers,
He met
der grou
and it is
to it, th
other.

shore w
sledge,
island t
ed to b
Kamtsc
from or
was abo
in leng
was sho
rable, a
great ne

named by us Point Rodney, which bore from the island northwest half west, at the distance of three or four leagues ; but the high land, which assumed a more northerly direction, was perceived at a much greater distance.

The latitude of this island is $64^{\circ} 30'$ north, and its longitude is $193^{\circ} 57'$ east. It is about twelve miles in circumference. The surface of the ground principally consists of large loose stones, covered in many places with moss and other vegetables, of which twenty or thirty different species were observed, and most of them were in flower. But the captain saw not a tree or shrub, either on the island, or upon the neighbouring continent. Near the beach where he landed, was a considerable quantity of wild purslain, long-wort, pease, &c. some of which he took on board for boiling. He saw several plovers, and other small birds ; a fox was also seen. He met with some decayed huts, built partly under ground. People had lately been upon the island ; and it is more than probable that they often repair to it, there being a beaten path from one end to the other. At a small distance from that part of the shore where our gentlemen landed, they found a sledge, which induced captain Cook to give the island the appellation of Sledge Island. It appeared to be such a one as is used by the Russians in Kamtschatka, for the purpose of conveying goods from one place to another over the snow or ice. It was about twenty inches in breadth, and ten feet in length, had a sort of rail-work on each side, and was shod with bone. Its construction was admirable, and its various parts were put together with great neatness ; some with wooden pins, but for the

most part with thongs or lashings of whale-bone, in consequence of which the captain imagined that it was entirely the workmanship of the natives.

We weighed anchor at three o'clock in the morning of the 6th, and made sail to the northwest, with a light breeze from the southward. Having afterwards but little wind, and that variable, we made but slow progress; and, at eight o'clock in the evening, finding the ships getting into shoal-water, we anchored in seven fathoms, our distance from the coast being about two leagues. Sledge Island then bore south 51° east, nine or ten leagues distant. Soon after we had let go our anchors, the weather, which had been misty, cleared up, and we perceived high land extending from north 40° east to north 30° west, seemingly disjoined from the coast near which we lay at anchor, which appeared to extend to the north-eastward. We at the same time saw an island bearing north 81° west, at the distance of eight or nine leagues. It seemed to be of small extent, and was named King's Island. We rode at anchor till eight the next morning, when we weighed, and steered a north-west course. The weather being clear towards the evening we obtained a sight of the north-western land, distant about three leagues. We passed the night in making short boards, the weather being rainy and misty, and the wind inconsiderable. Between four and five in the morning of the 8th, we again had a sight of the northwest land; and, not long afterwards, having a calm, and being driven by a current towards the shore, we thought proper to anchor in twelve fathoms water, at the distance of about two miles from the coast. Over

the west
in the lo
tude of
springing
made sail
passage
near whi
the 6th.
water, an
coasts, an

Convin
we now
part, near
The wea
but, at fo
abled us t
steep roc
island to
bore west
tioned, so
under it,
low land,
treme po
distant,
also beyo
we imagi

This p
tinguise
is the v
known.
and in th
that we
haps, we

the western extremity is a lofty peaked hill, situate in the longitude of $192^{\circ} 18'$ east, and in the latitude of $65^{\circ} 36'$ north. A north-easterly breeze springing up at eight o'clock, we weighed, and made sail to the south-eastward, hoping to find a passage between this northwest land and the coast, near which we had cast anchor in the evening of the 6th. But we quickly got into seven fathoms water, and perceived low land connecting the two coasts, and the elevated land behind it.

Convinced that the whole was a continued coast, we now tacked, and steered for its north-western part, near which we anchored in seventeen fathoms. The weather at present was very thick and rainy; but, at four the next morning, it cleared up, and enabled us to discern the neighbouring land. A lofty steep rock or island bore west by south; another island to the northward of it, and considerably larger, bore west by north; the peaked hill before mentioned, southeast by east; and the point that was under it, south 32° east. Under this hill is some low land, extending towards the northwest, the extreme point of which was now about one league distant, bearing northeast by east. Over it, and also beyond it, we observed some high land, which we imagined was a continuation of the continent.

This point of land, which the Commodore distinguished by the name of Cape Prince of Wales, is the western extreme of all America hitherto known. It stands in the longitude of $191^{\circ} 45'$ east, and in the latitude of $65^{\circ} 46'$ north. We fancied that we saw some people on the coast; and, perhaps, we were not mistaken in our supposition, as

some elevations like stages, and others resembling huts, were observed at the same place.

At eight o'clock this morning, a faint northerly breeze arising, we weighed anchor: but our sails were scarcely set, when it began to blow and rain with great violence, there being at the same time misty weather. The wind and current were in contrary directions, raising such a sea, that it often broke into the ship. Having plied to windward, with little effect till two o'clock in the afternoon, we stood for the island which we had perceived to the westward, intending to cast anchor under it till the gale should abate. But, upon our nearer approach to this land, we found that it was composed of two small islands, neither of which exceeded three or four leagues in circumference. As these could afford us little shelter, we did not come to anchor, but continued to stretch towards the west; and, about eight o'clock in the evening, we saw land extending from north-northwest to west by south, the distance of the nearest part being six leagues. We stood on till ten o'clock, and then made a board towards the east, in order to pass the night.

On Monday the 10th, at break of day, we resumed our westward course for the land seen by us the preceding evening. At eleven minutes after seven o'clock, it extended from south 72° west, to north 41° east. Betwixt the south-western extremity, and a point bearing west, six miles distant, the coast forms a spacious bay, in which we dropped our anchors at ten in the forenoon, about two miles from the northern shore, over a gravelly bottom at the depth of ten fathoms. The northern point of this bay bore north 43° east; its southern point

south 58° west, betwixt the two islands, day, were lying north

While on the north seemed to at the perceive burdens tain Coos with three officers. armed w drawn u them ca of our g their cap civility sufficien party; the nation alone, v and ges some tr him tw The Ca these a present given t return.

The ing the

south 58° west ; the bottom of the bay, north 60° west, between two and three leagues distant ; and the two islands that we had passed the preceding day, were at the distance of fourteen leagues, bearing north 72° east.

While we were steering for this bay, we observed on the north shore a village and some people, who seemed to have been thrown into confusion, or fear, at the sight of our vessels. We could plainly perceive persons running up the country with burdens upon their shoulders. At this village captain Cook proposed to land ; and accordingly went with three armed boats, accompanied by some of the officers. Thirty or forty men, each of whom was armed with a spontoon, a bow, and arrows, stood drawn up on an eminence near the houses ; three of them came down towards the shore, on the approach of our gentlemen, and were so polite as to pull off their caps, and make them low bows. Though this civility was returned, it did not inspire them with sufficient confidence to wait for the landing of our party ; for, the instant they put the boats ashore, the natives retired. Captain Cook followed them alone, without any thing in his hand ; and, by signs and gestures, prevailed on them to stop, and accept some trifling presents ; in return for these, they gave him two fox-skins, and a couple of sea-horse teeth. The Captain was of opinion, that they had brought these articles down with them for the purpose of presenting them to him ; and that they would have given them to him, even if they had expected no return.

They seemed very timid and cautious ; intimating their desire, by signs, that no more of our peo-

ple should be suffered to come up. On the Captain's laying his hand on the shoulder of one of them, he started back several paces; in proportion as he advanced, they retreated, always in the attitude of being ready to make use of their spears; while those on the eminence were prepared to support them with their arrows. Insensibly, the Captain and two or three of his companions introduced themselves among them. The distribution of a few beads among some of them soon created a degree of confidence, so that they were not alarmed when the Captain was joined by a few more of his people, and, in a short time, a kind of traffic was entered into. In exchange for tobacco, knives, beads, and other articles, they gave a few arrows, and some of their clothing; but nothing that our people had to offer could induce them to part with a spear or a bow. These they held in continual readiness, never quitting them, except at one time, when four or five persons laid theirs down, while they favoured our party with a song and a dance; and even then, they placed them in such a manner, that they could lay hold of them in a moment.

Their arrows were pointed either with stone or bone, but very few of them had barbs; and some of them had a round blunt point. What use these are applied to, we cannot say, unless it be to kill small animals without damaging the skin. Their bows are such as we had observed on the American coast: their spontoons, or spears, were of iron or steel, and of European or Asiatic workmanship; and considerable pains had been taken to embellish them with carvings, and inlayings of brass, and of a white metal. Those who stood with bows and ar-

rows in
thern st
quiver,
tain arro
ingly be
was ver
Several
indicate
any one
people.

All t
on that
cheek-b
people
bling th
well ma
very dif
either s
cept on
the onl
to be s
middle
across
thers;
some o
These
them,
ther p
ricans
Th
cap, a
all ma
animal
hair o

rows in their hands, had a spear slung by a leathern strap over their right shoulder. A leathern quiver, slung over their left shoulder, served to contain arrows; and some of these quivers were exceedingly beautiful, being made of red leather, on which was very neat embroidery, and other ornaments. Several other things, and particularly their clothing, indicated a degree of ingenuity, far surpassing what any one would expect to find among so northern a people.

All the Americans we had seen since our arrival on that coast, had round chubby faces, and high cheek-bones, and were rather low of stature. The people among whom we now were, far from resembling them, had long visages, and were stout and well made; upon the whole, they appeared to be a very different nation. No women, nor children of either sex, were observed, nor any aged persons, except one man, whose head was bald; and he was the only one who bore no arms; the others seemed to be select men, and rather under than above the middle age. The elderly man had a black mark across his face, which was not perceived in any others; all of them had their ears perforated, and some of them had glass beads hanging to them. These were the only fixed ornaments seen about them, for they wear none to the lips: this is another particular, in which they differ from the Americans we had lately seen.

Their apparel consisted of a pair of breeches, a cap, a frock, a pair of boots, and a pair of gloves, all made of the skins of deer, dogs, seals, and other animals, and extremely well dressed; some with the hair or fur on, and others without it. The caps

were made in such a manner, as to fit the head very close : and besides these caps, which were worn by most of them, we procured from them some hoods, made of dog skins, that were sufficiently large to cover both head and shoulders. Their hair was apparently black, but their heads were either shaved, or the hair cut close off, and none of them wore beards. Of the few articles which they obtained from our people, knives and tobacco were what they set the most value upon.

The village was composed both of their winter and their summer habitations ; the former are exactly like a vault, the floor of which is sunk below the surface of the earth. One of them, which captain Cook examined, was of an oval figure, about twenty feet in length, and twelve or more in height ; the framing consisted of wood, and the ribs of whales, judiciously disposed, and bound together with smaller materials of the same kind. Over this framing, a covering of strong coarse grass was laid, and that again was covered with earth ; so that on the outside, the house had the appearance of a little hillock, supported by a wall of stone, of the height of three or four feet, which was built round the two sides, and one end. At the other end of the habitation, the earth was raised sloping, to walk up to the entrance, which was by a hole in the top of the roof, over that end. The floor was boarded, and under it was a sort of cellar, in which the Captain saw nothing but water ; at the end of each house was a vaulted room, which he supposed was a store-room. These store-rooms communicated, by a dark passage, with the house ; and with the open air, by a hole in the roof, which was even with the

ground
to be e
to the
made a
stood a
large b

The
circular
Slight
sea-an
examin
just wi
were
were o
of the
observ
with
deer-s

Ab
ten or
some
comp
tende
thus
they
fox k
long
all p
their
have
up i
impr
for
morn

ground one walked upon ; but they cannot be said to be entirely below ground ; for one end extended to the edge of the hill, along which they were made and which was built up with stone. Over it stood a kind of sentry-box, or tower, formed of the large bones of great fish.

Their summer huts were of a tolerable size, and circular, being brought to a point at the top. Slight poles and bones, covered with the skins of sea-animals, composed the framing. Captain Cook examined the inside of one : there was a fire-place just within the door, where a few wooden vessels were deposited, all very dirty. Their bed-places were close to the side, and occupied about one half of the circuit : some degree of privacy seemed to be observed ; for there were several partitions made with skins. The bed and bedding consisted of deer-skins, and most of them were clean and dry.

About the houses were erected several stages, ten or twelve feet in height, such as we had seen on some parts of the American coast. They were composed entirely of bones, and were apparently intended for drying their fish and skins, which were thus placed out of the reach of their dogs, of which they had great numbers. These dogs are of the fox kind, rather large, and of different colours, with long soft hair, that resembles wool. They are, in all probability, used for the purpose of drawing their sledges in winter ; for it appears that they have sledges, as the Captain saw many of them laid up in one of their winter huts. It is likewise not improbable that dogs constitute a part of their food, for several lay dead, which had been killed that morning.

The canoes of these people are of the same kind with those of the Northern Americans, some, both of the large and small sort, being seen lying in a creek near the village.

From the large bones of fish and other sea animals, it appeared that the sea furnished them with the greater part of their subsistence. The country seemed extremely barren, as our gentlemen saw not a tree nor a shrub. At some distance towards the west, they observed a ridge of mountains covered with snow, that had fallen not long before.

At first, some of us supposed this land to be a part of the island of Alaschka, laid down in Mr Stæhlin's map before mentioned; but from the appearance of the coast, the situation of the opposite shore of America, and from the longitude, we soon conjectured that it was, more probably, the country of the Tschutski, or the eastern extremity of Asia, explored by Beering in the year 1728. In admitting this, however, without farther examination, we must have pronounced Mr Stæhlin's map, and his account of the new northern Archipelago, to be either remarkably erroneous, even in latitude, or else to be a mere fiction; a judgment which we would not presume to pass, upon a publication so respectably vouched, without producing the most decisive proofs.

After our party had remained with these people between two and three hours, they returned on board; and, soon after, the wind becoming southerly, we weighed anchor, stood out of the bay, and steered to the northeast, between the coast and the two islands. At twelve o'clock the next day (August 11) the former extended from south 80° west,

to north
and the
bore sou
67° 5¼'
sounding
sition ne
the two
seven le

We s
order to
coast.

and ther
vours to
at last
the only
driving
of the v
tant; t
Wales,

ern par
southea
about f
was dis
to sho
ships la
the eve
did we

A n
and ma
bi
we plic
but we
13th,
south,

to north 84° west ; the latter bore south 40° west ; and the peaked hill, over Cape Prince of Wales, bore south 36° east. The latitude of the ship was $67^{\circ} 5\frac{1}{4}'$ north, the longitude $191^{\circ} 19'$ east ; our soundings were twenty-eight fathoms ; and our position nearly in the middle of the channel, between the two coasts, each being at the distance of about seven leagues.

We steered to the eastward from this station, in order to make a nearer approach to the American coast. In this course the water gradually shoaled ; and there being very little wind, and all our endeavours to increase our depth failing, we were obliged at last to anchor in six fathoms ; which was the only remedy remaining, to prevent the ships driving into more shallow water. The nearest part of the western land bore west, twelve leagues distant ; the peaked mountain over Cape Prince of Wales, bore south 16° west ; and the most northern part of the American continent in sight, east-southeast ; the distance of the nearest part being about four leagues. After we had anchored, a boat was dispatched to sound, and the water was found to shoal gradually towards the land. While our ships lay at anchor, which was from six to nine in the evening, we perceived little or no current, nor did we observe that the water rose or fell.

A northerly breeze springing up, we weighed, and made sail to the westward, which course soon brought us into deep water ; and, during the 12th, we plied to the northward in sight of both coasts, but we kept nearest to that of America. On the 13th, at four in the afternoon, a breeze arising at south, we steered northeast by north, till four o'clock

the next morning, when, seeing no land, we directed our course east by north; and between the hours of nine and ten, land appeared, which we supposed was a continuation of the continent. It extended from east by south, to east by north; and not long afterwards we descried more land, bearing north by east. Coming rather suddenly into thirteen fathoms water, at two in the afternoon, we made a trip off till four, when we again stood in for the land; which soon after we saw, extending from north to southeast, the nearest part being at the distance of three or four leagues. The coast here forms a point, named by us Point *à l'égave*, which is situated in the latitude of $67^{\circ} 45'$ north, and in the longitude of $194^{\circ} 51'$ east. The land seemed to be very low near the sea, but a little farther it rises into hills at a moderate height; the whole was free from snow, and apparently destitute of wood. We now tacked, and bore away northwest by west; but, in a short time afterwards, thick weather, with rain, coming on, and the wind increasing, we hauled more to the westward. At two o'clock the next morning, the wind veered to southwest by south, and blew a strong gale, which abated towards noon. We now stood to the northeast till six the next morning, when we steered rather more easterly: in this run we met with several sea-horses and great numbers of birds; some of which resembled sand-larks, and others were not larger than hedge-sparrows. We also saw some shags, so that we judged we were not far from land; but having a thick fog, we could not expect to see any; and as the wind blew strong, it was not deemed prudent to continue a course which was most likely to bring us to it.

From the
to six o
steered
into fift
east by
our dep
it shoal
haul cl
About
clearly
observa
noon,
 197°
time, g
Som
ness in
ice, us
taken
ble we
sharpn
weathe
ed to i
afterw
left us
of the
and th
the ice
the lat
on any
trable
north
with
were
The

From the noon of this day, (the 16th of August) to six o'clock in the morning of the following, we steered east by north; a course which brought us into fifteen fathoms water. We now steered north-east by east, thinking, by such a course, to increase our depth of water. But, in the space of six leagues, it shoaled to eleven fathoms, which induced us to haul close to the wind, that now blew at west. About twelve o'clock, both sun and moon were clearly seen at intervals, and we made some hasty observations for the longitude; which, reduced to noon, when the latitude was $70^{\circ} 38'$ north, gave $197^{\circ} 41'$ east. The time-keeper, for the same time, gave 198° .

Some time in the afternoon, we perceived a brightness in the northern horizon, like that reflected from ice, usually called the blink. Little notice was taken of it, from a supposition that it was improbable we should so soon meet with the ice. The sharpness of the air, however, and gloominess of the weather, for the two or three preceding days, seemed to indicate some sudden change. About an hour afterwards, the sight of an enormous mass of ice, left us no longer in any doubt respecting the cause of the brightness of the horizon. Between two and three o'clock, we tacked close to the edge of the ice, in twenty-two fathoms water, being then in the latitude of $70^{\circ} 41'$ north, and unable to stand on any farther: for the ice was perfectly impenetrable, and extended from west by south, to east by north, as far as the eye could reach. Here we met with great numbers of sea-horses, some of which were in the water, but far more upon the ice. The Commodore had thoughts of hoisting out the

boats to kill some of these animals ; but, the wind freshening, he gave up the design ; and we continued to ply towards the south, or rather towards the west, for the wind came from that quarter. We made no progress ; for, at twelve on the 18th, our latitude was $70^{\circ} 44'$ north, and we were almost five leagues farther to the east.

We were, at present, close to the edge of the ice, which was as compact as a wall, and appeared to be at least ten or twelve feet in height ; but, farther northward, it seemed to be much higher. Its surface was exceedingly rugged, and, in several places, we saw pools of water upon it. We now stood to the south, and, after running six leagues, shoaled the water to seven fathoms ; but it soon increased to the depth of nine fathoms. At this time, the weather, which had been hazy, becoming clearer, we saw land extending from south to southeast by east, at the distance of three or four miles. The eastern extremity forms a point, which was greatly encumbered with ice, on which account it was distinguished by the name of Icy Cape. Its latitude is $70^{\circ} 29'$ north, and its longitude $198^{\circ} 20'$ east. The other extreme of the land was lost in the horizon ; and we had no doubt of its being a continuation of the continent of America. The Discovery, being about a mile a-stern, and to leeward, met with less depth of water than we did ; and tacking on that account, the Commodore was obliged to tack also, to prevent separation.

Our present situation was very critical. We were upon a lee-shore in shoal-water, and the main body of the ice, to windward, was driving down upon us. It was evident, that if we continued

much lo
us asho
ground
land to
free fro
making
made a
ship tac
in some
southwe

On V
ing, the
northwa
north,
situation
ice abou
two lea
we got
pact th
north,
to atter
an ama
as we v
from e
them.
on bo
which,
cows ;
cularly
novelt
for so
been
if the
who

much longer between it and the land, it would force us ashore, unless it should chance to take the ground before us. It appeared almost to join the land to leeward, and the only direction that was free from it was to the south-westward. After making a short board to the north captain Cook made a signal for the *Discovery* to tack, and his ship tacked at the same time. The wind proved in some measure favourable, so that we lay up southwest, and southwest by west.

On Wednesday the 19th, at eight in the morning, the wind veering to west, we tacked to the northward, and, at twelve, the latitude was $70^{\circ} 6'$ north, and the longitude $196^{\circ} 42'$ east. In this situation we had a considerable quantity of drift ice about our ships, and the main ice was about two leagues to the north. Between one and two we got in with the edge of it. It was less compact than that which we had observed towards the north, but it was too close, and in too large pieces, to attempt forcing the ships through it. We saw an amazing number of sea-horses on the ice, and, as we were in want of fresh provisions, the boats from each ship were dispatched to procure some of them. By seven in the evening we had received on board the *Resolution* nine of these animals, which, till this time, we had supposed to be sea-cows; so that we were greatly disappointed, particularly some of the sailors, who, on account of the novelty of the thing, had been feasting their eyes for some days past. Nor would they now have been disappointed, nor have known the difference, if there had not been two or three men on board who had been in Greenland, and declared what

animals these were, and that no person ever ate of them. Notwithstanding this, we made them serve us for provisions, and there were few of our people who did not prefer them to our salt meat.

The fat of these animals is, at first, as sweet as marrow; but, in a few days, it becomes rancid, unless it is salted, in which state it will keep much longer. The lean flesh is coarse and blackish, and has a strong taste, and the heart is almost as well tasted as that of a bullock. The fat, when melted, affords a good quantity of oil, which burns very well in lamps; and their hides, which are of great thickness, were very useful about our rigging. The teeth, or tusks, of most of them, were, at this time, of very small size; even some of the largest and oldest of these animals had them not exceeding half a foot in length. Hence we concluded, that they had lately shed their old teeth.

They lie upon the ice in herds of many hundreds, huddling like swine, one over the other; and they roar very loud, so that in the night, or when the weather was foggy, they gave us notice of the vicinity of the ice, before we could discern it. We never found the whole herd sleeping, some of them being constantly upon the watch. These, on the approach of the boat, would awake those that were next to them, and, the alarm being thus gradually communicated, the whole herd would presently be awake. However, they were seldom in a hurry to get away before they had been once fired at. Then they would fall into the sea, one over the other, in the utmost confusion; and, if we did happen, at the first discharge, to kill those

we fired
wound

The
as som
when t
so in a
them v
but th
mere p
down
one to
life, w
will th
should
troy o
when
her for
druped
this an
Why
to det
the R
least r
anima
and is
like a
sists i
anima
The l
larges
the ta
der w
near t
weigh

we fired at, we generally lost them, though mortally wounded.

They did not appear to us to be so dangerous as some authors have represented them, not even when they were attacked. They are, indeed, more so in appearance than in reality. Vast multitudes of them would follow, and come close up to the boats, but the flash of a musquet in the pan, or even the mere pointing of one at them, would send them down in a moment. The female defends her young one to the very last, and at the expence of her own life, whether upon the ice or in the water. Nor will the young one quit the dam, though she should have been killed; so that, if you destroy one, you are sure of the other. The dam, when in the water, holds her young one between her fore fins. Mr Pennant, in his Synopsis of Quadrupeds, has given a very good description of this animal under the name of the *Arctic Walrus*. Why it should be called a sea-horse, is difficult to determine, unless the word be a corruption of the Russian name *Morse*, for they do not in the least resemble a horse. It is doubtless the same animal that is found in the Gulf of St Lawrence, and is there called a sea-cow. It is certainly more like a cow than a horse; but this resemblance consists in nothing but the snout. In short, it is an animal not unlike a seal, but incomparably larger. The length of one of them, which was none of the largest, was nine feet four inches from the snout to the tail; the circumference of its body at the shoulder was seven feet ten inches; its circumference near the hinder fins was five feet six inches, and the weight of the carcase without the head, skin, or en-

trails, was eight hundred and fifty-four pounds. The head weighed forty-one pounds and a half, and the skin two hundred and five pounds.

It may not be improper to remark, that, for some days before this time, we had often seen flocks of ducks flying to the south. They were of two species, the one much larger than the other. The larger sort was of a brown colour; and of the small sort, either the duck or drake was black and white, and the other brown. Some of our people said that they also saw geese. This seems to indicate, that there must be land to the northward, where these birds, in the proper season, find shelter for breeding, and whence they were now on their return to a warmer climate.

Soon after we had got our sea-horses on board, we were, in a manner, surrounded with the ice; and had no means of clearing it, but by steering to the southward, which we did till three o'clock the next morning, with a light westerly breeze, and, in general, thick, foggy weather. Our soundings were from twelve to fifteen fathoms. We then tacked and stood to the northward till ten o'clock, when the wind shifting to the north, we stood to the west-southwest and west. At two in the afternoon we fell in with the main ice, and kept along the edge of it, being partly directed by the roaring of the sea-horses, for we had an exceeding thick fog. Thus we continued sailing till near mid-night, when we got in among the loose pieces of ice.

The wind being easterly, and the fog very thick, we now hauled to the southward; and, at ten the next morning, the weather clearing up, we saw the American continent, extending from south by east,

to east
south to
five leagues
69° 32'
east; a
evident
which,
and the
where

Dur
and the
ther the
contin
o'clock
to sea
had the
north,
time to
nearest
league
point,
given
and in
ed to
but to
might
tant
advan
from
The
cept
But
O
and

to east by south ; and, at noon, from southwest half south to east, the distance of the nearest part being five leagues. We were at present in the latitude of $69^{\circ} 32'$ north, and in the longitude of $195^{\circ} 48'$ east ; and, as the main ice was not far from us, it is evident, that it now covered a part of the sea ; which, a few days before, had been free from it ; and that it extended farther towards the south, than where we first fell in with it.

During the afternoon we had but little wind ; and the master was sent in a boat to observe whether there was any current, but he found none. We continued to steer for the American land till eight o'clock, in order to obtain a nearer view of it, and to search for a harbour ; but seeing nothing that had the appearance of one, we again stood to the north, with a gentle westerly breeze. At this time the coast extended from southwest to east, the nearest part being at the distance of four or five leagues. The southern extreme seemed to form a point, to which the name of Cape Lisburne was given. It is situate in the latitude of $69^{\circ} 5'$ north, and in the longitude of $194^{\circ} 42'$ east, and appeared to be tolerably high land, even down to the sea, but there may be low land under it, which we might not then see, being not less than ten leagues distant from it. In almost every other part, as we advanced to the north, we had found a low coast, from which the land rises to a moderate height. The coast now before us was free from snow, except in one or two places, and had a greenish hue. But we could not discern any wood upon it.

On Saturday the 22d, the wind was southerly, and the weather for the most part foggy, with

some intervals of sunshine. At eight in the evening we had a calm, which continued till midnight, when we heard the surge of the sea dashing against the ice, and had many loose pieces about us. A light breeze now arose at northeast, and the fog being very thick, we steered to the south to get clear of the ice. At eight the next morning, the fog dispersed, and we hauled towards the west; for the commodore finding that he could not get to the north near the coast, by reason of the ice, resolved to try what could be done at a distance from it; and as the wind seemed to be fixed at north, he considered it as a favourable opportunity.

In our progress to the westward, the water gradually deepened to twenty-eight fathoms. With the northerly wind the air was sharp and cold; and we had fogs, sun-shine, showers of snow and sleet alternately. On the 26th, at ten in the morning, we fell in with the ice. At twelve, it extended from northwest to east by north, and seemed to be thick and compact. We were now, by observation, in the latitude of $69^{\circ} 36'$ north, and in the longitude of 184° east; and it now appeared that we had no better prospect of getting to the north here, than nearer the shore.

We continued steering to the west, till five in the afternoon, when we were, in some degree, embayed by the ice, which was very close in the northwest and northeast quarters, with a great quantity of loose ice about the edge of the main body. At this time we had baffling light airs, but the wind soon settled at south, and increased to a fresh gale, accompanied with showers of rain. We got the tack aboard, and stretched to the east, as this was

the only
ice.

On
we tack
in the
the ice
west,
could
Cook
the ice
various
scarce
was as
it had
marked
cept
It seem
and
sist
floatin
the la
which
been

Th
the m
tent,
the l
the s
ly i
prod
rath
duct
ble,
ed

the only direction in which the sea was free from ice.

On Thursday the 27th, at four in the morning, we tacked and stood to the westward, and at seven in the evening we were close in with the edge of the ice, which lay east-northeast, and west-southwest, as far in each of those directions as the eye could reach. There being but little wind, captain Cook went with the boats to examine the state of the ice. He found it consisting of loose pieces, of various extent, and so close together, that he could scarcely enter the outer edge with a boat; and it was as impracticable for the ships to enter it, as if it had been so many rocks. He particularly remarked, that it was all pure transparent ice, except the upper surface, which was rather porous. It seemed to be wholly composed of frozen snow, and to have been all formed at sea. For, not to insist on the improbability of such prodigious masses floating out of rivers, none of the productions of the land were found incorporated, or mixed in it; which would certainly have been the case, if it had been formed in rivers, either great or small.

The pieces of ice that formed the outer edge of the main body, were from forty or fifty yards in extent, to four or five; and the captain judged, that the larger pieces reached thirty feet or more, under the surface of the water. He also thought it highly improbable that this ice could have been the production of the preceding winter alone. He was rather inclined to suppose it to have been the production of many winters. It was equally improbable, in his opinion, that the little that now remained of the summer, could destroy even the tenth

part of what now subsisted of this great mass ; for the sun had already exerted upon it the full force and influence of his rays. The sun, indeed, according to his judgment, contributes very little towards reducing these enormous masses. For though that luminary is above the horizon a considerable while, it seldom shines out for more than a few hours at a time, and frequently is not seen for several successive days.

It is the wind, or rather the waves raised by the wind, that brings down the bulk of these prodigious masses, by grinding one piece against another, and by undermining and washing away those parts which are exposed to the surge of the sea. This was manifest from the captain's observing, that the upper surface of many pieces had been partly washed away, while the base, or under part, continued firm for several fathoms round that which appeared above water, like a shoal round a high rock. He measured the depth of water upon one, and found that it was fifteen feet, so that the ships might have sailed over it. If he had not measured this depth, he would have been unwilling to believe that there was a sufficient weight of ice above the surface, to have sunk the other so much below it. It may thus happen, that more ice is destroyed in one tempestuous season, than is formed in several winters, and an endless accumulation of it is prevented. But that there is constantly a remaining store, will be acknowledged by every one who has been upon the spot.

A thick fog which came on while the commodore was thus employed, hastened him with the boats aboard sooner than he could have wished, with one

sea-hor
but co
of the
really a
off and
o'clock
degree
dispatc
time be
furnish
noon,
tude 1
five fat
on boar
cient,
we hor
west.
this ta
the ea
ed ou
before
ice.
west,
south
On
ice to
land b
after
showe
soon
a nea
decre
when
ing t

sea-horse to each ship. Our party had killed many, but could not wait to bring them off. The number of these animals, on all the ice that we had seen, is really astonishing. We spent the night standing off and on, amongst the drift ice, and at nine o'clock the next morning, the fog having in some degree dispersed, boats from each of the ships were dispatched for sea-horses; for our people by this time began to relish them, and those we had before furnished ourselves with, were all consumed. At noon, our latitude was $69^{\circ} 17'$ north, our longitude 183° east, and our depth of water was twenty-five fathoms. At two in the afternoon, having got on board as many sea-horses as were deemed sufficient, and the wind freshening at south-southeast, we hoisted in the boats, and steered to the south-west. But being unable to weather the ice upon this tack, or to go through it, we made a board to the eastward till about eight o'clock, then resumed our course to the southwest, and were obliged before midnight to tack again, on account of the ice. Not long after, the wind veering to the north-west, and blowing a stiff gale, we stretched to the southwest, close hauled.

On the 29th, in the morning, we saw the main ice towards the north, and soon after, perceived land bearing southwest by west. In a short time after this, more land was seen, bearing west. It showed itself in two hills resembling islands, but soon the whole appeared connected. As we made a nearer approach to the land, the depth of water decreased very fast, so that, at twelve o'clock, when we tacked, we found only eight fathoms; being three miles from the coast, which extended

from south 30° east to north 60° west. The latter extremity terminating in a bluff point, being one of the hills mentioned before.

The weather was now very hazy, with drizzling rain; but, soon afterwards, it cleared up, particularly to the southward, westward, and northward. This enabled us to have a tolerable view of the coast; which resembles, in every respect, the opposite coast of America; that is, low land next the sea, with the higher land farther back. It was totally destitute of wood, and even of snow; but was probably covered with a mossy substance, that gave it a brownish hue. In the low ground that lay between the sea and the high land, was a lake, extending to the south-eastward farther than we could see. As we stood off, the most westerly of the two hills above mentioned came open off the bluff point, in a northwest direction. It had the appearance of an island, but it might perhaps be connected with the other by low land, though we did not see it. And if that be the case, there is a two-fold point, with a bay between them. This point, which is rocky and steep, received the name of Cape North. It is situate nearly in the latitude of $68^{\circ} 56'$ north, and in the longitude of $181^{\circ} 51'$ east. The coast beyond it doubtless] assumes a very westerly direction; for we could discern no land to the northward of it, though the horizon was there pretty clear. Wishing to see more of the coast to the westward, we tacked again, at two in the afternoon, thinking we should be able to weather Cape North; but finding we could not, the wind freshening, a thick fog arising, with much snow, and being apprehensive of the ice coming down upon us, the commodore relinquished

the des-
ward,

The
time w
that ca
pruden
ver a p
any di
cess.
of son
and w
his th
so as t
geogra
to ret
to pro
lantic.

the design he had formed of plying to the westward, and again stood off shore.

The season was now so far advanced, and the time when the frost generally sets in was so near, that captain Cook did not think it consistent with prudence, to make any farther attempts to discover a passage into the Atlantic Ocean this year, in any direction, so small was the probability of success. His attention was now directed to the search of some place, where we might recruit our wood and water; and the object that principally occupied his thoughts was, how he should pass the winter, so as to make some improvements in navigation and geography, and, at the same time, be in a condition to return to the northward the ensuing summer, to prosecute his search of a passage into the Atlantic.

END OF VOLUME SECOND.